

UPGRADING
AND
REPAIRING PCs
TECHNICIAN'S PORTABLE
REFERENCE

SECOND EDITION

que[®]

Scott Mueller and Mark Edward Soper

Upgrading and Repairing PCs Technician's Portable Reference, Second Edition

Copyright© 2001 by Que

All rights reserved. No part of this book shall be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without written permission from the publisher. No patent liability is assumed with respect to the use of the information contained herein.

Although every precaution has been taken in the preparation of this book, the publisher and authors assume no responsibility for errors or omissions. Neither is any liability assumed for damages resulting from the use of the information contained herein.

International Standard Book Number: 0-7897-2454-5

Library of Congress Catalog Card Number: 00-104012

Printed in the United States of America

First Printing: October 2000

02 01 00 4 3 2 1

Trademarks

All terms mentioned in this book that are known to be trademarks or service marks have been appropriately capitalized. Que cannot attest to the accuracy of this information. Use of a term in this book should not be regarded as affecting the validity of any trademark or service mark.

Warning and Disclaimer

Every effort has been made to make this book as complete and accurate as possible, but no warranty or fitness is implied. The information provided is on an *as is* basis. The authors and the publisher shall have neither liability nor responsibility to any person or entity with respect to any loss or damages arising from the information contained in this book.

Associate Publisher

Greg Wiegand

Senior Acquisitions Editor

Jill Byus Schorr

Senior Development Editor

Rick Kughen

Managing Editor

Thomas F. Hayes

Project Editor

Karen S. Shields

Copy Editor

Megan Wade

Technical Editor

Mark Reddin

Proofreader

Jeanne Clark

Indexer

Mary SeRine

Interior Design

Kevin Spear

Cover Design

Karen Ruggles

Layout Technicians

Heather Hiatt Miller

Stacey Richwine-DeRome

Contents at a Glance

1	General Technical Reference	1
2	System Components and Configuration	19
3	BIOS Configurations and Upgrades	69
4	SCSI and IDE Hard Drives and Optical Drives	93
5	Floppy, Removable, Tape, and Flash Memory Storage	143
6	Serial Ports and Modems	165
7	Parallel Ports, Printers, Scanners, and Drives	189
8	USB and IEEE-1394 Ports and Devices	205
9	Keyboards, Mice, and Input Devices	215
10	Video and Audio	237
11	Networking	271
12	Operating System Installation and Diagnostic Testing	299
13	Tools and Techniques	309
14	Connector Quick Reference	317
	Index	329

Contents

1 General Technical Reference 1

- PC Subsystem Components Quick Reference 1
- The Motherboard and Its Components 2
- Understanding Bits, Nibbles, and Bytes 3
 - Standard Capacity Abbreviations and Meanings 3
- Glossary of Essential Terms 5
 - PC99 Color Standards 10
- Hexadecimal/ASCII Conversions 10

2 System Components and Configuration 19

- Processors and Their Data Bus Widths 19
- Differences Between PC/XT and AT Systems 20
- Intel and Compatible Processor Specifications 21
- Troubleshooting Processor Problems 27
- Motherboard Form Factors 29
 - Baby-AT Motherboard 30
 - LPX Motherboard 31
 - ATX Motherboard 31
 - NLX Motherboard 32
- Which Motherboard Is Which? 32
- PC99 Color-Coding for Ports 33
- Power Supplies 34
 - LPX Versus ATX Power Supplies 34
 - Power Connectors for the Drive(s) 36
 - Quick-Reference Chart for Troubleshooting Power Supplies 37
- Memory Types 38
 - 30-Pin SIMM 39
 - 72-Pin SIMM 39
 - DIMMs 40
 - RDRAM 40
 - DDR SDRAM 41
 - Parity Versus Non-Parity Memory 42
 - Requirements for ECC Memory Use 43
 - Using the Divide by 3 Rule to Determine Parity Support 43
 - Using the Divide by 9 Rule to Determine Parity Support 43
 - Expanding Memory on a System 44
 - Memory Troubleshooting 45
 - Memory Usage Within the System 46
 - Hardware and Firmware Devices That Use Memory Addresses 46
 - Using Memory Addresses Beyond 1MB (OFFFFF) 49
 - Determining Memory Address Ranges in Use 49

- Other Add-On Card Configuration Issues 50
 - IRQs 50
 - DMA 52
 - Determining Actual IRQ and DMA Usage 52
 - I/O Port Addresses 54
 - Determining Actual I/O Address Ranges in Use 57
 - Troubleshooting Add-on Card Resource Conflicts 57
- Expansion Slots 62
 - ISA 62
 - EISA—A 32-bit Version of ISA 62
 - VL-Bus—A Faster 32-Bit Version of ISA 62
 - PCI 66
 - AGP 66

3 BIOS Configurations and Upgrades 69

- What the BIOS Is and What It Does 69
- When a BIOS Update Is Necessary 69
 - Specific Tests to Determine Whether Your BIOS Needs an Update 70
 - Fixing BIOS Limitations—BIOS Fixes and Alternatives 70
- How BIOS Updates Are Performed 71
- Where BIOS Updates Come From 71
- Precautions to Take Before Updating a BIOS 72
- How to Recover from a Failed BIOS Update Procedure 73
- Plug-and-Play BIOS 74
 - PnP BIOS Configuration Options 75
 - When to Use the PnP BIOS Configuration Options 77
- Other BIOS Troubleshooting Tips 77
- Soft BIOS CPU Speed and Multiplier Settings 78
- Determining Which BIOS You Have 79
- Determining the Motherboard Manufacturer for BIOS Upgrades 79
 - Identifying Motherboards with AMI BIOS 79
 - Identifying Motherboards with Award BIOS 81
 - Identifying Motherboards with Phoenix or Microid Research BIOS 82
- Accessing the BIOS Setup Programs 82
- How the BIOS Reports Errors 83
 - BIOS Beep Codes and Their Purposes 83
 - AMI BIOS Beep Codes 84
 - Award BIOS Beep Codes 84
 - Phoenix BIOS Beep Codes 85
 - IBM BIOS Beep and Alphanumeric Error Codes 85
- Microid Research Beep Codes 86
- Reading BIOS Error Codes 88
 - Onscreen Error Messages 88
 - Interpreting Error Codes and Messages 88
- BIOS Configuration Worksheet 89

4 SCSI and IDE Hard Drives and Optical Drives 93

- Understanding Hard Disk Terminology 93
 - Heads, Sectors per Track, and Cylinders 93
 - Hard Drive Heads 93
 - Sectors per Track 93
 - Cylinders 94

- IDE Hard Drive Identification 94
- Master and Slave Drives 95
- Breaking the 504MB (528-Million-Byte) Drive Barrier 97
- Using LBA Mode 98
 - When LBA Mode Is Necessary—and When Not to Use It 98
 - Problems with LBA Support in the BIOS 99
 - Dangers of Altering Translation Settings 99
 - Detecting Lack of LBA Mode Support in Your System 100
 - Using FDISK to Determine Compatibility Problems Between the Hard Disk and BIOS 101
 - Getting LBA and Extended Int13h Support for Your System 102
 - Determining Whether Your System Supports Extended Int13h 103
 - Drive Capacity Issues in Microsoft Windows 95 and 98 104
- Sources for BIOS Upgrades and Alternatives for Large IDE Hard Disk Support 105
- Standard and Alternative Jumper Settings 106
- Improving Hard Disk Speed 107
- Ultra DMA 108
 - UDMA/66 and UDMA/100 Issues 108
- Bus-Mastering Chipsets for IDE 109
- Benefits of Manual Drive Typing 111
- Troubleshooting IDE Installation 112
- SCSI 113
 - SCSI Types and Data Transfer Rates 113
- Single-Ended Versus Differential SCSI 114
 - Low-Voltage Differential Devices 114
- Recognizing SCSI Interface Cables and Connectors 115
 - 8-Bit SCSI Centronics 50-Pin Connector 115
 - SCSI-2 High-Density Connector 115
 - SCSI-3 68-Pin P Cable 116
 - RAID Array, Hot Swappable 80-Pin Connector 116
- SCSI Drive and Device Configuration 117
 - SCSI Device ID 117
 - SCSI Termination 119
- SCSI Configuration Troubleshooting 120
- Hard Disk Preparation 124
- Using FDISK 125
 - Drive-Letter Size Limits 125
 - Large Hard Disk Support 125
- Benefits of Hard Disk Partitioning 126
 - FAT-32 Versus FAT-16 Cluster Sizes 127
 - Converting FAT-16 Partition to FAT-32 128
 - NTFS Considerations and Default Cluster Sizes 128
- How FDISK and the Operating System Create and Allocate Drive Letters 129
 - Assigning Drive Letters with FDISK 130
- High-Level (DOS) Format 132
- Replacing an Existing Drive 133
 - Drive Migration for MS-DOS Users 133
 - Drive Migration for Windows 9x/Me Users 134
 - XCOPY32 for Windows 9x Data Transfer 134

- Hard Disk Drive Troubleshooting and Repair 135
- Optical Drive Interface Types 137
- MS-DOS Command-Line Access to CD-ROM Drives for Reloading Windows 137
- Troubleshooting Optical Drives 138
 - Failure Reading a CD 138
 - Failure Reading CD-R and CD-RW Disks in a CD-ROM or DVD Drive 139
 - IDE/ATAPI CD-ROM Drive Runs Slowly 139
 - Trouble Using Bootable CDs 140

5 Floppy, Removable, Tape, and Flash Memory Storage 143

- Floppy Drives 143
 - Where Floppy Drives Fail—and Simple Fixes 144
 - The Drive Cover 144
 - The Stepper Motor 144
 - Interface Circuit Boards 145
 - Read/Write Heads 145
 - Floppy Drive Hardware Resources 145
 - Don't Use a Floppy Drive While Running a Tape Backup 146
 - Disk Drive Power and Data Connectors 146
 - Floppy Drive Troubleshooting 148
 - Common Floppy Drive Error Messages—Causes and Solutions 149
- Removable Storage Drives 150
 - Sources for “Orphan” Drive Media, Repairs, Drivers, and Support 153
 - Emergency Access to Iomega Zip Drive Files in Case of Disaster 153
 - Troubleshooting Removable Media Drives 154
- Types of Flash Memory Devices 155
- Tape Backup Drives and Media 155
 - Common Tape Backup Standards 155
 - Travan Tape Drives and Media 156
 - Proprietary Versions of Travan Technology 157
 - Getting Extra Capacity with Verbatim QIC-EX Tape Media 157
 - OnStream ADR Tape Drives and Media 158
 - Choosing the Best High-Performance Backup Technology 159
 - Successful Tape Backup and Restore Procedures 160
 - Tape Drive Troubleshooting 161
 - Tape Retensioning 164

6 Serial Ports and Modems 165

- Understanding Serial Ports 165
 - Pinouts for Serial Ports 166
 - Current Loop Serial Devices and 25-Pin Serial Ports 168
- UARTs 169
 - UART Types 169
 - Identifying Your System UART 170
- High-Speed Serial Ports (ESP and Super ESP) 171
- Upgrading the UART Chip 171

- Serial Port Configuration 172
 - Avoiding Conflicts with Serial Ports 173
 - Troubleshooting I/O Ports in Windows 9x and Me 173
 - Advanced Diagnostics Using Loopback Testing 174
 - Loopback Plug Pinouts—Serial Ports 175
- Modems 176
 - Modems and Serial Ports 176
 - Modem Modulation Standards 176
 - 56Kbps Standards 177
 - Upgrading from x2 or K56flex to V.90 with Flash Upgrades 178
 - External Versus Internal Modems 180
 - Modem Troubleshooting 180
 - Pinouts for External Modem Cable (9-Pin at PC) 184
- Win98SE, Windows 2000, Windows Me, and ICS 184
 - Requirements for ICS 185
 - Overview of the Configuration Process 185

7 Parallel Ports, Printers, Scanners, and Drives 189

- Parallel Port Connectors 189
 - Parallel Port Performance 190
 - Parallel Port Configurations 191
 - Testing Parallel Ports 191
 - Troubleshooting Parallel Ports 192
- Printers 193
 - Hewlett-Packard PCL Versions 194
 - Comparing Host-Based to PDL-Based Printers 195
 - Printer Hardware Problems 196
 - Printer Connection Problems 199
 - Printer Driver and Application Problems 201
- Troubleshooting Parallel Port and Other Types of Scanners 202
- Parallel Port Drives 203

8 USB and IEEE-1394 Ports and Devices 205

- Universal Serial Bus 205
 - USB Port Identification 205
 - Pinout for the USB Connector 205
 - Typical USB Port Locations 206
 - Adding USB Ports to Your Computer 206
 - Prerequisites for Using USB Ports and Peripherals 207
 - Troubleshooting USB Ports 207
 - Using USB Hubs with Legacy (Serial, Parallel, and PS/2) Ports 209
 - Online Sources for Additional USB Support 209
 - USB 2.0 209
- IEEE-1394 210
 - Adding IEEE-1394 Ports to Your Computer 210
 - Comparing USB and IEEE-1394 211
 - Troubleshooting IEEE-1394 Host Adapters and Devices 212
 - IEEE-1394 and Linux 213
 - Online Sources for Additional IEEE-1394 Support 213

9 Keyboards, Mice, and Input Devices 215

- Keyboard Designs 215
 - The 101-Key Enhanced Keyboard 215
 - 101-Key Versus 102-Key Keyboards 215
 - The 104-Key Windows Keyboard 215

- Using Windows Keys 215
 - Keyboard-Only Commands for Windows 9x/NT4/2000/Me with Any Keyboard 216
- Standard Versus Portable Keyboards 219
- Keyswitch Types 219
- Cleaning a Foam-Element Keyswitch 220
- Adjusting Keyboard Parameters in Windows 221
- Keyboard Layouts and Scan Codes 221
- Keyboard Connectors 225
 - Keyboard Connector Signals 226
- USB Keyboard Requirements 227
- Keyboard Troubleshooting and Repair 227
- Keyboard Connector Voltage and Signal Specifications 229
- Keyboard Error Codes 229
- Mice and Pointing Devices 230
 - Mouse Motion Detection Methods 230
 - Pointing Device Interface Types 230
 - Wireless Mouse Types 231
 - Software Drivers for the Mouse 231
 - Alternative Pointing Devices 232
- Mouse Troubleshooting 233

10 Video and Audio 237

- Selecting a Monitor Size 237
- Monitor Resolution 238
 - CRTs Versus LCDs 238
 - Common Monitor Resolutions 238
- LCD Versus CRT Display Size 239
- Monitor Power Management Modes 239
- VGA Video Connector Pinouts 241
 - VGA DB-15 Analog Connector Pinout 241
 - Digital Flat Panel Pinouts 242
 - Digital Visual Interface Pinouts 243
- VGA Video Display Modes 244
- Video RAM 246
- Memory, Resolution, and Color Depth 247
- Determining the Amount of RAM on Your Display Card 249
- Local-Bus Video Standards 249
- RAMDAC 251
- Refresh Rates 252
 - Adjusting the Refresh Rate of the Video Card 252
 - Comparing Video Cards with the Same Chipset 253
- Setting Up Multiple Monitor Support in Windows 98/Me/2000 253
 - System Configuration Issues for Multiple-Monitor Support 256
- Video Card and Chipset Makers Model Reference 256
 - 3-D Chipsets 256
- Multimedia Devices 256
- Troubleshooting Video Capture Devices 257
 - Testing a Monitor with Common Applications 258
- Audio I/O Connectors 260
 - Connectors for Advanced Features 262

- Sound Quality Standards 263
- Configuring Sound Cards 263
 - PCI Versus ISA Sound Cards 264
 - Multifunction (Modem and Sound) Cards 264
- Troubleshooting Audio Hardware 265
 - Hardware (Resource) Conflicts 265
 - Detecting Resource Conflicts 265
 - Most Common Causes of Hardware Conflicts with Sound Card 266
 - Freeing Up IRQ 5 for Sound Card Use While Still Printing 267
 - Other Sound Card Problems 267

11 Networking 271

- Client/Server Versus Peer-to-Peer Networking 271
- Choosing Network Hardware and Software 272
 - NIC 272
 - UTP Cable 273
 - Hub 273
 - Software 273
- Network Protocols 275
 - IP and TCP/IP 275
- Selecting a Network Data-Link Protocol (Specification) 276
- Network Cable Connectors 277
- Wire Pairing for Twisted-Pair Cabling 278
 - Making Your Own UTP Cables 278
- Network Cabling Distance Limitations 280
- Cabling Standards for Fast Ethernet 281
- Specialized Network Options 281
 - What About Home Networking? 281
 - Wireless Networking Standards 282
 - Wireless Network Configuration and Selection Issues 284
- TCP/IP Network Protocol Settings 284
 - TCP/IP Protocol Worksheet 285
- Troubleshooting Networks 287
 - Troubleshooting Network Software Setup 287
 - Troubleshooting Networks in Use 288
 - Troubleshooting TCP/IP 289
- Direct Cable Connections 290
 - Null Modem and Parallel Data-Transfer Cables 290
 - Direct Connect Software 291
 - Troubleshooting Direct Cable Connections 295

12 Operating System Installation and Diagnostic Testing 299

- Installing an Operating System on an Empty Drive 299
 - Installing MS-DOS 299
 - Installing Windows 9x 300
 - Installing Windows Me 300
 - Installing Windows NT 4.0 or Windows 2000 301
- Upgrading an Operating System 302
 - Installing to the Same Folder 302
 - Installing to a Different Folder 302
 - Installing to a Different Partition 302

- Checking for IRQ, DMA, I/O, and Memory Usage 302
 - MS-DOS Using MSD 302
 - Windows 9x/2000/Me 303
 - Windows NT 4.0 304
- Software Toolkit 304

13 Tools and Techniques 309

- General Information 309
- Hardware Tools and Their Uses 309
 - Tools of the Trade—Drive Installation 310
 - Tools of the Trade—Motherboard and Expansion Card Installation 311
 - Tools of the Trade—External Device and Networking Installation 312
 - Tools of the Trade—Data Transfer 313
 - Tools of the Trade—Cleaning and Maintenance 314

14 Connector Quick Reference 317

- Serial Ports and Cables 317
 - Parallel Ports 318
 - SCSI Ports 318
 - USB and IEEE-1394 (FireWire) 319
- Video Connectors 321
 - Video Ports 321
 - Video Cables 322
- Sound Card Ports 323
 - Sound Card External Ports 323
 - Sound Card Internal Connectors 325
- Network and Modem Ports and Cables 325
 - RJ-45 Port and Cable 325
 - RJ-11 Port and Cable Connector 326
 - Older Network Connectors 326

Index 329

About the Authors

Scott Mueller is president of Mueller Technical Research, an international research and corporate training firm. Since 1982, MTR has specialized in the industry's longest running, most in-depth, accurate, and effective corporate PC hardware and technical training seminars, maintaining a client list that includes Fortune 500 companies, the U.S. and foreign governments, and major software and hardware corporations, as well as PC enthusiasts and entrepreneurs. His seminars have been presented to thousands of PC support professionals throughout the world.

Scott Mueller has developed and presented training courses in all areas of PC hardware and software. He is an expert in PC hardware, operating systems, and data-recovery techniques. For more information about a custom PC hardware or data-recovery training seminar for your organization, contact Lynn at

Mueller Technical Research
21 Spring Lane
Barrington Hills, IL 60010-9009
Phone: (847) 854-6794
Fax: (847) 854-6795
Internet: scottmueller@compuserve.com
Web: <http://www.m-tr.com>

Scott has many popular books, articles, and course materials to his credit, including *Upgrading and Repairing PCs*, which has sold more than 2 million copies, making it by far the most popular PC hardware book on the market today.

If you have questions about PC hardware, suggestions for the next edition of the book, or any comments in general, send them to Scott via email at scottmueller@compuserve.com.

When he is not working on PC-related books or teaching seminars, Scott can usually be found in the garage working on performance projects. This year a Harley Road King with a Twin-Cam 95ci Stage III engine continues as the main project (it's amazing how something with only two wheels can consume so much time and money <g>), along with a modified 5.7L '94 Impala SS and a 5.9L Grand Cherokee (hotrod SUV).

Mark Edward Soper is president of Select Systems and Associates, Inc., a technical writing and training organization that has been in business since 1989. Select Systems specializes in revealing the hidden power and features in PCs, their hardware, and their software. Select Systems has developed training courses and manuals for computer training firms and industrial, manufacturing, and media clients in print, HTML, and Adobe Acrobat formats.

Mark has taught computer troubleshooting and other technical subjects to thousands of students from Maine to Hawaii since 1992. He is an A+ Certified hardware technician and a Microsoft Certified Professional. He has been writing technical documents since the mid-1980s, and has contributed to several other Que books, including *Upgrading and Repairing PCs, 11th and 12th Editions*; *Upgrading and Repairing Networks, 2nd Edition*; and *Special Edition Using Windows Millennium Edition*. Mark co-authored the original edition of this book, and his first books on A+ Certification will be published after the revised A+ Certification Exams are released at the end of 2000. Watch for details about these and other book projects at the newly improved Que Web site at www.mcp.com.

For more information about customized technical reference and training materials, contact

Select Systems and Associates, Inc.
1100 W. Lloyd Expy #104
Evansville, IN 47708
Phone: (812) 421-1170
Fax: (812) 426-6138

Email: mesoper@selectsystems.com

Web: <http://www.selectsystems.com>

Mark has been writing for major computer magazines since 1990, with more than 125 articles in publications such as *SmartComputing*, *PCNovice*, *PCNovice Guides*, and the *PCNovice Learning Series*. His early work was published in *WordPerfect Magazine*, *The WordPerfectionist*, and *PCToday*. Many of Mark's articles are available in back issue or electronically via the World Wide Web at www.smartcomputing.com. Select Systems maintains a subject index of all Mark's articles at <http://www.selectsystems.com>.

When he's not sweating out a writing deadline, Mark enjoys life with his wife, Cheryl, a children's librarian who is also a published writer. Their children (now 21, 20, 20, and 18) are all computer users, keeping him busy with their questions, and he also provides computer support to his local church. Mark still finds time to

watch, photograph, and (occasionally) ride trains. He's using his years of experience with photography and computers to build a personal image archive, and he has also created archiving programs for a local university.

Mark welcomes your comments and suggestions about this book. Send them to mesoper@selectsystems.com.

About the Technical Editor

Mark Reddin, MCSE, A+, is a Microsoft Certified Systems Engineer and an A+ Certified PC technician. In addition to his work as a Que technical editor, Mark provides consulting services for NT systems and business networks. He has enjoyed using computers at the hobbyist level since the days of the Atari 400. This interest led to a professional level of involvement and, after dabbling in programming, he discovered networking. He achieved his first certification from Microsoft in early 1998 and has worked as a configuration technician for a computer reseller as well as an NT specialist and general networking contractor.

Acknowledgments

Mark would like to thank the following people: Scott Mueller, whose *Upgrading and Repairing PCs* has been on his “short list” of great computer books for more than 10 years and whose latest edition provided much of the material for this book; Jill Byus Schorr and Rick Kughen at Que, whose encouragement and guidance have helped make this book a success; Cheryl, who never stopped believing that I could write; and God, who gives all of us talents and abilities and cheers us on as we develop them.

Tell Us What You Think!

As the reader of this book, *you* are our most important critic and commentator. We value your opinion and want to know what we're doing right, what we could do better, what areas you'd like to see us publish in, and any other words of wisdom you're willing to pass our way.

As the associate publisher for this book, I welcome your comments. You can fax, email, or write me directly to let me know what you did or didn't like about this book—as well as what we can do to make our books stronger.

When you write, please be sure to include this book's title and authors as well as your name and phone or fax number. I will carefully review your comments and share them with the authors and editors who worked on the book.

Fax: 317-581-4666

Email: hardware@mcp.com

Mail: Macmillan USA
201 West 103rd Street
Indianapolis, IN 46290

Introduction

If you're a computer repair technician or student, you know just how crucial it is to have concise, yet detailed, technical specifications at your fingertips. It can mean the success or failure of your job.

Unfortunately, most detailed hardware books are far too large to tote around in a briefcase, book bag, or in your back pocket—where you need them.

Upgrading and Repairing PCs: Technician's Portable Reference is the exception. This concise book provides just the information you need to upgrade or repair your PC, without weighing you down.

Although you should consider this book to be a companion to Scott Mueller's best-selling opus, *Upgrading and Repairing PCs*, you'll also find that it stands quite well on its own. While much of the information is in the mother book, much of what is found here is presented in a boiled-down, easy-to-digest reference that will help you get the job done quickly and efficiently. You'll also find that this portable reference contains some information not found in the main book—information that is specially geared to help the technician in the field.

I recommend that you keep *Upgrading and Repairing PCs, 12th Edition* (ISBN 0-7897-2303-4) on your desk or workbench and *Upgrading and Repairing PCs: Technician's Portable Reference* with your toolkit, so it's ready to go with you anytime—whether it's to a customer job site or a class.

Chapter 1

General Technical Reference

PC Subsystem Components Quick Reference

The following table lists the major PC subsystems and how they are configured. Use this table as a shortcut to the most likely place(s) to look for problems with these subsystems. Then, go to the appropriate chapter for more information.

Table 1.1 Major PC Subsystems and Where to Configure Them

Subsystem	Components	How Configured and Controlled	See Chapters for Details
Motherboard	CPU, RAM, ROM, expansion slots, BIOS	Jumper blocks (CPU) BIOS (all others plus CPU on some systems)	2, 3
I/O ports	Serial	BIOS and operating system	3, 6
	Parallel	BIOS and operating system	3, 7
	USB	BIOS and operating system drivers	3, 8
	PS/2 mouse	MB jumper blocks or BIOS	3, 9
	Keyboard	BIOS	3, 9
I/O devices	Modem	Driver software	6
	Sound card	Driver software	10
Input devices	Keyboard, mouse, trackball, touchpad	BIOS Driver software	9 9
	Scanner	Driver software	7
Standard mass storage	Floppy	BIOS	5
	IDE	BIOS and jumper blocks	4
Add-on mass storage	CD-ROM, Zip, LS-120, other removable media	Jumper blocks and driver software	4
	SCSI	Jumper blocks and add-on BIOS card or driver software	4

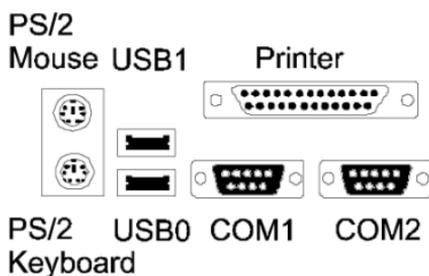


Figure 1.2 Ports on the rear of a typical ATX motherboard.

Understanding Bits, Nibbles, and Bytes

The foundation of all memory and disk size calculations is the *byte*. When storing plain-text data, a byte equals one character.

Data can also be stored or transmitted in portions of a byte. A *bit* equals 1/8 of a byte, or, in other words, a byte equals eight bits. A *nibble* equals 1/2 of a byte, or four bits. Thus, two nibbles equal one byte. Keep the difference between bits and bytes in mind as you review the table of standard capacity abbreviations and meanings.

Standard Capacity Abbreviations and Meanings

Use the following table to translate megabytes, gigabytes, and the other abbreviations used to refer to memory and disk space into their decimal or binary values.

Unfortunately, some parts of the computer industry use the decimal values, while others use the binary values. Typically, hard disk and other drive manufacturers rate their products in decimal megabytes or gigabytes. On the other hand, the ROM BIOS on most (but not all) systems and the MS-DOS and Windows FDISK programs use binary megabytes or gigabytes, thus creating an apparent discrepancy in disk capacity. RAM is virtually always calculated using binary values.

Table 1.2 Standard Abbreviations and Meanings

Abbreviation	Description	Decimal Power	Dec
Kbit or Kb	Kilobit	10 ³	1,0
K or KB	Kilobyte	10 ³	1,0
Mbit or Mb	Megabit	10 ⁶	1,0
M or MB	Megabyte	10 ⁶	1,0
Gbit or Gb	Gigabit	10 ⁹	1,0
G or GB	Gigabyte	10 ⁹	1,0
Tbit or Tb	Terabit	10 ¹²	1,0
T or TB	Terabyte	10 ¹²	1,0

Note

For other conversion and reference tables, see the Technical Reference (found on the CD-ROM) of *Upgrading and Repairing PCs, Twelfth Edition*.

Glossary of Essential Terms

Table 1.3 Terms and Their Definitions

Term	Definition
ACPI	Advanced configuration and power interface; power management for all types of computer devices.
AGP	Accelerated graphics port; a fast dedicated slot interface between the video adapter or chipset and the motherboard chipset North Bridge; developed by Intel. AGP is 32 bits wide; runs at 66MHz; and can transfer 1, 2, or 4 bits per cycle (1x, 2x, and 4x modes).
APM	Advanced power management; power management for hard drives and monitors.
ATAPI	AT attachment-packet interface; modified version of IDE that supports removable media and optical drives that use software drivers. Can coexist on the same cable with IDE hard drives.
Beep code	A series of one or more beeps used by the system BIOS to report errors. Beep codes vary by BIOS brand and version.
BIOS	Basic input/output system; a chip on the system board that controls essential devices, such as the keyboard, basic video display, floppy and hard drives, and memory.
Cluster	Also called <i>allocation unit</i> ; the minimum disk space actually used by a file when it is stored; this size increases with larger drives due to the limitations of the FAT size.
Color depth	How many colors a video card can display at a given resolution; the higher the resolution, the more RAM required to display a given color depth.
COM	Communication port; also called <i>serial</i> port.
Combo slot	Also called <i>shared slot</i> ; a pair of slots that share a single card bracket; only one of the two slots can be used at a time.
Compact flash	A type of flash memory device.
CPU	Central processing unit; the "brains" of a computer.
CRT	Cathode-ray tube; conventional TV-like picture tube display technology used on most desktop monitors.
Data bus	The connection that transmits data between the processor and the rest of the system. The width of the data bus defines the number of data bits that can be moved in to or out of the processor in one cycle.
DCC	Direct cable connection; Windows 9x/Me/2000 program that enables computers to link up through parallel or serial ports; Windows NT 4.0 supports serial port linkups only.

Table 1.3 Terms and Their Definitions Continued

Term	Definition
Device Manager	Tab in the System Properties sheet for Windows 9x/2000/Me that enables you to view, change the configuration of, and remove system and add-on devices.
DFP	Digital flat panel; an early digital monitor standard replaced by DVI.
DIMM	Dual inline memory module; leading type of memory device from late 1990s to present; current versions have 168 edge connectors.
DMA	Direct memory access; data transfer method used by some devices to bypass the CPU and go directly to and from memory; some ISA devices require the use of a specific DMA channel.
DNS	Domain name system; matches IP addresses to Web site and Web server names.
DPMS	Display Power Management Standard; the original power management standard for monitors.
Drive geometry	Combination of heads, sectors per track, and cylinders used to define an IDE drive in the system BIOS CMOS setup program. When a drive is moved to another system, the same drive geometry and translation settings must be used to enable the new system to read data from the drive.
DVD	Digital versatile disc; the emerging standard for home video and also a popular add-on for computers.
DVI	Digital video interface; the current digital monitor standard.
ECC	Error correcting code. A method of error correction; a type of system memory or cache that is capable of detecting and correcting some types of memory errors without interrupting processing. ECC requires parity-checked memory plus an ECC-compatible motherboard with ECC enabled.
EISA	Enhanced Industry Standard Architecture; a 32-bit version of ISA developed in 1989; found primarily in older servers; obsolete, but can be used for ISA cards.
FAT	File allocation table; on-disk directory that lists filenames, sizes, and locations of all clusters in a file. The size of the FAT limits the size of the drive.
FAT-16	16-bit FAT supported by MS-DOS and Windows 95/95 OSR 1.x; drive letter limited to 2.1GB.
FAT-32	32-bit FAT supported by Windows 95 OSR 2.x/98/Me; drive letter limited to 2.1TB.
FCC ID	Identification number placed on all computer hardware to certify it's approved by the Federal Communications Commission. Use this number to locate drivers for some boards.
Firmware	"Software on a Chip"; general term for BIOS code on motherboards and in devices such as modems, printers, and others.
Flash BIOS	BIOS/firmware on systems or devices that can be updated through software.
Flash memory	Memory device whose contents can be changed electrically, but doesn't require electrical power to retain its contents; used in digital cameras and portable music players.

Table 1.3 Terms and Their Definitions Continued

Term	Definition
HomePNA	Home Phoneline Networking Alliance; a trade group that develops standards for networking over telephone lines within a home or small office.
Host-based	A type of printer in which the computer processes the image data; these printers are cheaper but less versatile than those containing a page-description or printer command language.
Hub	Device that accepts multiple connections, such as USB, 10BASE-T, and 10/100 or Fast Ethernet hubs.
I/O port	Input/output port; used to communicate to and from motherboard or add-on devices. All devices require one or more I/O port address ranges, which must be unique to each device.
ICS	Internet connection sharing; a feature on Windows 98SE, Windows 2000, and Windows Me that enables one computer to share its Internet connection with other Windows computers, including Win95 and Win98 original versions.
IDE	Integrated Drive Electronics; also called <i>AT Attachment</i> . The 40-pin interface used on most hard drives, CD-ROMs, and internal versions of LS-120 SuperDisk and Iomega Zip drives. Drives must be jumpered as master, slave, or single.
IEEE-1284	A series of parallel-port standards that include EPP and ECP high-speed bi-directional modes.
IEEE-1394	Also called <i>i.Link</i> and <i>FireWire</i> ; a very high-speed, direct-connect interface for high-performance storage, digital video editing, and scanning devices.
IPX/SPX	Standard protocols used on NetWare 3.x/4.x networks.
IRQ	Interrupt request line; used by devices to request attention from the CPU.
ISA	Industry Standard Architecture; a slot standard developed by IBM in 1981 for 8-bit cards; enhanced by IBM in 1984 for 16-bit cards; now obsolete, although most systems have one or two on board.
KDE	K Desktop Environment; a popular GUI for Linux.
LAN	Local area network.
LBA	Logical block addressing; a BIOS-based method of remapping the normal drive geometry to overcome the 504-megabyte/528.5-million-byte limit imposed by normal IDE drive designs. Can also be implemented by add-on cards or software drivers.
LCD	Liquid crystal display; flat-panel display technology used on notebook and advanced desktop computers.
Legacy	Non plug-and-play (PnP) card; also can refer to serial and parallel ports.
Local Bus	A series of high-speed slot standards (VL-Bus, PCI, and AGP) for video that bypass the slow ISA bus.
Loopback	A method of testing ports that involves sending data out and receiving data back through the same port; implemented with loopback plugs that loop send lines back to receive lines.
LPT	Line printer port; also called <i>parallel</i> port.
LS-120	Also called <i>SuperDisk</i> ; a 3.5" drive and disk made by Imation (originally 3M) with 120MB capacity. Drive can also read/write/format standard 1.44MB 3.5" media.

Table 1.3 Terms and Their Definitions Continued

Term	Definition
MCA	Micro Channel Architecture; a 16/32-bit slot standard developed by IBM in 1987 for its PS/2 models. Never became popular outside IBM circles; obsolete and incompatible with any other standard.
Memory bank	Amount of memory (in bits) equal to the system bus of a specific CPU. The number of memory modules to achieve a memory bank on a given system varies with the CPU and the memory types the system can use.
Memory stick	A type of flash memory device developed by Sony for use in its camera and electronic products.
Mwave	A series of IBM-made multifunction cards that combine sound and modem functions.
NetBEUI	Microsoft version of NetBIOS network protocol; can be used for small, non-routable workgroup networks.
NIC	Network interface card; connects your computer to a LAN (local area network).
Parity	A method of error checking in which an extra bit is sent to the receiving device to indicate whether an even or odd number of binary 1 bits was transmitted. The receiving unit compares the received information with this bit and can obtain a reasonable judgment about the validity of the character. Parity checking was used with many early memory chips and SIMMs, but is now used primarily in modem and serial port configuration.
Parity error	An error displayed when a parity check of memory reveals incorrect values were stored; the system halts and all unsaved work is lost.
PC Card	Current term for former PCMCIA card standard used in notebook computers.
PC/AT	Systems using an 80286 or better CPU; these have a 16-bit or wider data bus.
PC/XT	Systems using an 8088 or 8086 CPU; these have an 8-bit data bus.
PCI	Peripheral Component Interconnect; a 32/64-bit slot standard developed by Intel in 1992; 32-bit version used in all PCs from mid-1990s onward for most add-on cards; 64-bit version found in some servers.
PCL	Printer Control Language; a series of printer control commands and routines used by Hewlett-Packard on its LaserJet printers.
PCMCIA	Personal Computer Memory Card International Association; original term for what are now called <i>PC Cards</i> ; primarily used in notebook computers. Some use PCMCIA/PC Card to avoid confusion with regular add-on cards for desktop computers.
PDL	Page Description Language; general term for any set of printer commands, such as PCL or PostScript.
Peer server	Computer that can be used as a client and also shares printers, folders, and drives with other users.
PIO	Programmed input/output; a series of IDE data-transfer rates that enable faster data throughput. Both the drive and interface must support the same PIO mode for safety.
PnP	Plug-and-Play; the combination of add-on device, BIOS, and operating system (OS) that enables the OS to detect, install software for, and configure the device. PnP is supported by Windows 9x/Me/2000.
POST	Power on self test; a test performed by the system BIOS during system startup.

Table 1.3 Terms and Their Definitions Continued

Term	Definition
PostScript	Adobe's sophisticated printer language used in laser and inkjet printers designed for graphic arts professionals.
QIC	Quarter-Inch Committee; the standards body responsible for most tape drive standards used by PC clients and small network servers.
QIC-EX	Extra-capacity cartridges developed for some QIC, QIC-Wide, and Travan drives by Verbatim.
Register size	Number of bits of data the CPU can process in a single operation.
Resolution	Combination of horizontal and vertical pixels in an image; larger monitors support higher resolutions.
ROM BIOS	Read-only memory BIOS; older BIOS chips that were socketed and could be updated only by being physically replaced.
RS-232	Diverse serial port standard with many different device-specific pinouts; supports both 9-pin and 25-pin ports.
Scan codes	Hexadecimal codes transmitted by the keyboard when keys are struck; must be converted to ASCII for display onscreen.
SCSI	Small computer system interface; a family of high-performance interfaces used on high-speed hard drives, optical drives, scanners, and other internal and external devices. Each device must have a unique ID number.
SIMM	Single Inline Memory Module; common type of memory device from late 1980s to mid-1990s; can have 30 or 72 edge connectors.
SmartMedia	A type of flash memory device.
SoundBlaster	Creative Labs' longtime family of sound cards; the <i>de facto</i> standard for DOS-based audio.
TCP/IP	Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol; the protocol of the World Wide Web and the Internet.
Travan	A family of tape drives and media developed from QIC and QIC-Wide standards by Imation (originally 3M).
UART	Universal Asynchronous Receive/Transmit chip; the heart of a serial port or hardware-based modem.
UDMA	Ultra DMA; a series of IDE data transfer rates that use DMA for even faster performance. Most effective when combined with bus-mastering hard disk host adapter driver software.
USB	Universal Serial Bus; a high-speed, hub-based interface for pointing, printing, and scanning devices.
UTP	Unshielded twisted-pair cable, such as Category 5 used with 10/100 Ethernet.
v.90	Current 56Kbps high-speed, dial-up modem standard; replaced x2 and K56flex.
v.92	New version of v.90 due in late 2000; supports call waiting and faster uploading.
VESA	Video Electronic Standards Association; trade group of monitor and video card makers that develops various display and power management standards.
VGA	Video graphics adapter; a family of analog display standards that support 16 or more colors and 640×480 or higher resolutions.

Table 1.3 Terms and Their Definitions Continued

Term	Definition
VL-Bus	VESA Local-Bus; a slot standard based on ISA that added a 32-bit connector to ISA slots in some 486 and early Pentium models; obsolete, but can be used for ISA cards.
Windows keys	Keys beyond the normal keyboard's 101 keys that perform special tasks in Windows 9x/NT4/2000/Me.
WINS	Windows Internet Naming Service; matches IP addresses to computers on a Windows network.
x86	All processors that are compatible with Intel CPUs from the 8086/88 through the newest Pentium IIIs and Celerons. Can refer to both Intel and non-Intel (AMD, VIA/Cyrix) CPUs.

PC99 Color Standards

Table 1.4 PC99 Color Coding Standards for Ports

Port Type	Color
Analog VGA (DB15)	Blue
Audio line in	Light blue
Audio line out	Lime green
Digital monitor (DFP)	White
IEEE-1394 (i.Link, FireWire)	Grey
Microphone	Pink
MIDI/game port	Gold
Parallel port	Burgundy
Serial Port	Teal or turquoise
Speaker out (subwoofer)	Orange
Right-to-left speaker	Brown
USB	Black
Video out	Yellow
SCSI, network, telephone, modem, and so on	None
PS/2 Keyboard	Purple
PS/2 Mouse	Green

Hexadecimal/ASCII Conversions

Use Table 1.5 to look up the various representations for any character you see onscreen or want to insert into a document. You can use the Alt+keypad numbers to insert any character into an ASCII document you create with a program such as Windows Notepad or MS-DOS's Edit.

Table 1.5 Hexadecimal/ASCII Conversions					
Dec	Hex	Octal	Binary	Name	Character
0	00	000	0000 0000	blank	
1	01	001	0000 0001	happy face	☺
2	02	002	0000 0010	inverse happy face	☹
3	03	003	0000 0011	heart	♥
4	04	004	0000 0100	diamond	♦
5	05	005	0000 0101	club	♣
6	06	006	0000 0110	spade	♠
7	07	007	0000 0111	bullet	•
8	08	010	0000 1000	inverse bullet	◦
9	09	011	0000 1001	circle	◉
10	0A	012	0000 1010	inverse circle	◊
11	0B	013	0000 1011	male sign	♂
12	0C	014	0000 1100	female sign	♀
13	0D	015	0000 1101	single note	♩
14	0E	016	0000 1110	double note	♪
15	0F	017	0000 1111	sun	☀
16	10	020	0001 0000	right triangle	▸
17	11	021	0001 0001	left triangle	▹
18	12	022	0001 0010	up/down arrow	↕
19	13	023	0001 0011	double exclamation	‼
20	14	024	0001 0100	paragraph sign	¶
21	15	025	0001 0101	section sign	§
22	16	026	0001 0110	rectangular bullet	■
23	17	027	0001 0111	up/down to line	↕
24	18	030	0001 1000	up arrow	↑
25	19	031	0001 1001	down arrow	↓
26	1A	032	0001 1010	right arrow	→
27	1B	033	0001 1011	left arrow	←
28	1C	034	0001 1100	lower left box	◓
29	1D	035	0001 1101	left/right arrow	↔
30	1E	036	0001 1110	up triangle	▴
31	1F	037	0001 1111	down triangle	▾
32	20	040	0010 0000	space	Space
33	21	041	0010 0001	exclamation point	!
34	22	042	0010 0010	quotation mark	"
35	23	043	0010 0011	number sign	#

Table 1.5 Hexadecimal/ASCII Conversions Continued

Dec	Hex	Octal	Binary	Name	Character
36	24	044	0010 0100	dollar sign	\$
37	25	045	0010 0101	percent sign	%
38	26	046	0010 0110	ampersand	&
39	27	047	0010 0111	apostrophe	'
40	28	050	0010 1000	opening parenthesis	(
41	29	051	0010 1001	closing parenthesis)
42	2A	052	0010 1010	asterisk	*
43	2B	053	0010 1011	plus sign	+
44	2C	054	0010 1100	comma	,
45	2D	055	0010 1101	hyphen or minus sign	-
46	2E	056	0010 1110	period	.
47	2F	057	0010 1111	slash	/
48	30	060	0011 0000	zero	0
49	31	061	0011 0001	one	1
50	32	062	0011 0010	two	2
51	33	063	0011 0011	three	3
52	34	064	0011 0100	four	4
53	35	065	0011 0101	five	5
54	36	066	0011 0110	six	6
55	37	067	0011 0111	seven	7
56	38	070	0011 1000	eight	8
57	39	071	0011 1001	nine	9
58	3A	072	0011 1010	colon	:
59	3B	073	0011 1011	semicolon	;
60	3C	074	0011 1100	less-than sign	<
61	3D	075	0011 1101	equal sign	=
62	3E	076	0011 1110	greater-than sign	>
63	3F	077	0011 1111	question mark	?
64	40	100	0100 0000	at sign	@
65	41	101	0100 0001	capital A	A
66	42	102	0100 0010	capital B	B
67	43	103	0100 0011	capital C	C
68	44	104	0100 0100	capital D	D
69	45	105	0100 0101	capital E	E
70	46	106	0100 0110	capital F	F
71	47	107	0100 0111	capital G	G
72	48	110	0100 1000	capital H	H

Table 1.5 Hexadecimal/ASCII Conversions Continued

Dec	Hex	Octal	Binary	Name	Character
73	49	111	0100 1001	capital I	I
74	4A	112	0100 1010	capital J	J
75	4B	113	0100 1011	capital K	K
76	4C	114	0100 1100	capital L	L
77	4D	115	0100 1101	capital M	M
78	4E	116	0100 1110	capital N	N
79	4F	117	0100 1111	capital O	O
80	50	120	0101 0000	capital P	P
81	51	121	0101 0001	capital Q	Q
82	52	122	0101 0010	capital R	R
83	53	123	0101 0011	capital S	S
84	54	124	0101 0100	capital T	T
85	55	125	0101 0101	capital U	U
86	56	126	0101 0110	capital V	V
87	57	127	0101 0111	capital W	W
88	58	130	0101 1000	capital X	X
89	59	131	0101 1001	capital Y	Y
90	5A	132	0101 1010	capital Z	Z
91	5B	133	0101 1011	opening bracket	[
92	5C	134	0101 1100	backward slash	\
93	5D	135	0101 1101	closing bracket]
94	5E	136	0101 1110	caret	^
95	5F	137	0101 1111	underscore	_
96	60	140	0110 0000	grave	`
97	61	141	0110 0001	lowercase A	a
98	62	142	0110 0010	lowercase B	b
99	63	143	0110 0011	lowercase C	c
100	64	144	0110 0100	lowercase D	d
101	65	145	0110 0101	lowercase E	e
102	66	146	0110 0110	lowercase F	f
103	67	147	0110 0111	lowercase G	g
104	68	150	0110 1000	lowercase H	h
105	69	151	0110 1001	lowercase I	i
106	6A	152	0110 1010	lowercase J	j
107	6B	153	0110 1011	lowercase K	k
108	6C	154	0110 1100	lowercase L	l
109	6D	155	0110 1101	lowercase M	m
110	6E	156	0110 1110	lowercase N	n

Table 1.5 Hexadecimal/ASCII Conversions Continued

Dec	Hex	Octal	Binary	Name	Character
111	6F	157	0110 1111	lowercase O	o
112	70	160	0111 0000	lowercase P	p
113	71	161	0111 0001	lowercase Q	q
114	72	162	0111 0010	lowercase R	r
115	73	163	0111 0011	lowercase S	s
116	74	164	0111 0100	lowercase T	t
117	75	165	0111 0101	lowercase U	u
118	76	166	0111 0110	lowercase V	v
119	77	167	0111 0111	lowercase W	w
120	78	170	0111 1000	lowercase X	x
121	79	171	0111 1001	lowercase Y	y
122	7A	172	0111 1010	lowercase Z	z
123	7B	173	0111 1011	opening brace	{
124	7C	174	0111 1100	vertical line	
125	7D	175	0111 1101	closing brace	}
126	7E	176	0111 1110	tilde	~
127	7F	177	0111 1111	small house	£
128	80	200	1000 0000	C cedilla	Ç
129	81	201	1000 0001	u umlaut	ü
130	82	202	1000 0010	e acute	é
131	83	203	1000 0011	a circumflex	â
132	84	204	1000 0100	a umlaut	ä
133	85	205	1000 0101	a grave	à
134	86	206	1000 0110	a ring	å
135	87	207	1000 0111	c cedilla	ç
136	88	210	1000 1000	e circumflex	ê
137	89	211	1000 1001	e umlaut	ë
138	8A	212	1000 1010	e grave	è
139	8B	213	1000 1011	l umlaut	ï
140	8C	214	1000 1100	l circumflex	î
141	8D	215	1000 1101	l grave	ì
142	8E	216	1000 1110	A umlaut	Ä
143	8F	217	1000 1111	A ring	Å
144	90	220	1001 0000	E acute	É
145	91	221	1001 0001	ae ligature	æ
146	92	222	1001 0010	AE ligature	Æ
147	93	223	1001 0011	o circumflex	ô

Table 1.5 Hexadecimal/ASCII Conversions Continued

Dec	Hex	Octal	Binary	Name	Character
148	94	224	1001 0100	o umlaut	ö
149	95	225	1001 0101	o grave	ò
150	96	226	1001 0110	u circumflex	û
151	97	227	1001 0111	u grave	ù
152	98	230	1001 1000	y umlaut	ÿ
153	99	231	1001 1001	O umlaut	Ö
154	9A	232	1001 1010	U umlaut	Ü
155	9B	233	1001 1011	cent sign	¢
156	9C	234	1001 1100	pound sign	£
157	9D	235	1001 1101	yen sign	¥
158	9E	236	1001 1110	Pt	₭
159	9F	237	1001 1111	function	f
160	A0	240	1010 0000	a acute	á
161	A1	241	1010 0001	l acute	í
162	A2	242	1010 0010	o acute	ó
163	A3	243	1010 0011	u acute	ú
164	A4	244	1010 0100	n tilde	ñ
165	A5	245	1010 0101	N tilde	Ñ
166	A6	246	1010 0110	a macron	ā
167	A7	247	1010 0111	o macron	ō
168	A8	250	1010 1000	opening question mark	¿
169	A9	251	1010 1001	upper-left box	/
170	AA	252	1010 1010	upper-right box	ø
171	AB	253	1010 1011	1/2	½
172	AC	254	1010 1100	1/4	¼
173	AD	255	1010 1101	opening exclamation	¡
174	AE	256	1010 1110	opening guillemets	«
175	AF	257	1010 1111	closing guillemets	»
176	B0	260	1011 0000	light block	■
177	B1	261	1011 0001	medium block	■
178	B2	262	1011 0010	dark block	■
179	B3	263	1011 0011	single vertical	≥
180	B4	264	1011 0100	single right junction	∕
181	B5	265	1011 0101	2 to 1 right junction	μ
182	B6	266	1011 0110	1 to 2 right junction	∂
183	B7	267	1011 0111	1 to 2 upper-right	Σ
184	B8	270	1011 1000	2 to 1 upper-right	Π
185	B9	271	1011 1001	double right junction	π

Table 1.5 Hexadecimal/ASCII Conversions Continued

Dec	Hex	Octal	Binary	Name	Character
186	BA	272	1011 1010	double vertical	∫
187	BB	273	1011 1011	double upper-right	∫
188	BC	274	1011 1100	double lower-right	∫
189	BD	275	1011 1101	1 to 2 lower-right	Ω
190	BE	276	1011 1110	2 to 1 lower-right	æ
191	BF	277	1011 1111	single upper-right	ø
192	C0	300	1100 0000	single lower-left	¿
193	C1	301	1100 0001	single lower junction	¡
194	C2	302	1100 0010	single upper junction	¬
195	C3	303	1100 0011	single left junction	√
196	C4	304	1100 0100	single horizontal	f
197	C5	305	1100 0101	single intersection	≈
198	C6	306	1100 0110	2 to 1 left junction	Δ
199	C7	307	1100 0111	1 to 2 left junction	«
200	C8	310	1100 1000	double lower-left	»
201	C9	311	1100 1001	double upper-left	…
202	CA	312	1100 1010	double lower junction	g
203	CB	313	1100 1011	double upper junction	ß
204	CC	314	1100 1100	double left junction	Ã
205	CD	315	1100 1101	double horizontal	=
206	CE	316	1100 1110	double intersection	⊕
207	CF	317	1100 1111	1 to 2 lower junction	æ
208	D0	320	1101 0000	2 to 1 lower junction	–
209	D1	321	1101 0001	1 to 2 upper junction	–
210	D2	322	1101 0010	2 to 1 upper junction	“
211	D3	323	1101 0011	1 to 2 lower-left	”
212	D4	324	1101 0100	2 to 1 lower-left	˘
213	D5	325	1101 0101	2 to 1 upper-left	˘
214	D6	326	1101 0110	1 to 2 upper-left	÷
215	D7	327	1101 0111	2 to 1 intersection	∅
216	D8	330	1101 1000	1 to 2 intersection	ÿ
217	D9	331	1101 1001	single lower-right	ÿ
218	DA	332	1101 1010	single upper-right	ø
219	DB	333	1101 1011	inverse space	
220	DC	334	1101 1100	lower inverse	<
221	DD	335	1101 1101	left inverse	>
222	DE	336	1101 1110	right inverse	fi

Table 1.5 Hexadecimal/ASCII Conversions Continued

Dec	Hex	Octal	Binary	Name	Character
223	DF	337	1101 1111	upper inverse	ƒl
224	E0	340	1110 0000	alpha	α
225	E1	341	1110 0001	beta	β
226	E2	342	1110 0010	Gamma	Γ
227	E3	343	1110 0011	pi	π
228	E4	344	1110 0100	Sigma	Σ
229	E5	345	1110 0101	sigma	σ
230	E6	346	1110 0110	mu	μ
231	E7	347	1110 0111	tau	τ
232	E8	350	1110 1000	Phi	Φ
233	E9	351	1110 1001	theta	θ
234	EA	352	1110 1010	Omega	Ω
235	EB	353	1110 1011	delta	δ
236	EC	354	1110 1100	infinity	∞
237	ED	355	1110 1101	phi	φ
238	EE	356	1110 1110	epsilon	ε
239	EF	357	1110 1111	intersection of sets	∩
240	F0	360	1111 0000	is identical to	⬮
241	F1	361	1111 0001	plus/minus sign	±
242	F2	362	1111 0010	greater/equal sign	≥
243	F3	363	1111 0011	less/equal sign	≤
244	F4	364	1111 0100	top half integral	∫̄
245	F5	365	1111 0101	lower half integral	∫̅
246	F6	366	1111 0110	division sign	÷
247	F7	367	1111 0111	approximately	≈
248	F8	370	1111 1000	degree	°
249	F9	371	1111 1001	filled-in degree	◌°
250	FA	372	1111 1010	small bullet	•
251	FB	373	1111 1011	square root	√
252	FC	374	1111 1100	superscript n	ⁿ
253	FD	375	1111 1101	superscript 2	²
254	FE	376	1111 1110	box	◻
255	FF	377	1111 1111	phantom space	◻

Chapter 2

System Components and Configuration

Processors and Their Data Bus Widths

Table 2.1 Processors and Their Data Bus Widths

Processor	Data Bus Width
Intel 8088	8-bit
Intel 8086	16-bit
Intel 286	16-bit
Intel 386SX	16-bit
Intel 386DX	32-bit
Intel 486SLC	16-bit ⁴
Intel 486DLC	32-bit ⁴
Intel 486 (all SX/DX series)	32-bit
Intel 5X86	32-bit ^{5,6}
Intel Pentium	64-bit
AMD K5	64-bit ¹
Intel Pentium MMX	64-bit
AMD K6	64-bit ¹
Cyrix 6x86	64-bit ³
Cyrix 6x86MX	64-bit ³
Cyrix MII	64-bit ²
Cyrix III	64-bit ⁷
Intel Pentium Pro	64-bit
Intel Pentium II	64-bit
Intel Celeron	64-bit
Intel Pentium III	64-bit
Pentium II Xeon	64-bit
Intel Pentium III Xeon	64-bit
AMD Athlon	64-bit
AMD Duron	64-bit ⁸
Intel Itanium	64-bit ⁹
Intel Willamette	64-bit ¹⁰

1. Pin-compatible with Pentium.

2. Cyrix is now a division of VIA; pin-compatible with Pentium.

3. Designed by Cyrix, produced for Cyrix by IBM. Chips might be marked as “Cyrix” or “IBM”; pin-compatible with Pentium.
4. Designed by Cyrix, produced by Texas Instruments and others. Chips might be marked as “Cyrix” or “Texas Instruments.” Despite names, 486SLC was similar to 386SX, and 486DLC was similar to 386DX.
5. Used as an upgrade to 486SX/DX-based systems.
6. Different internally from AMD’s chip, but also used as an upgrade to 486SX/DX-based systems.
7. Pin-compatible with Intel Celeron.
8. Uses new Socket A technology.
9. Future CPU model; will be capable of running new 64-bit instructions as well as 32-bit Windows instructions; previously code-named “Merced.”
10. Future CPU model; is designed to run 32-bit Windows instructions.

Differences Between PC/XT and AT Systems

Systems that feature an 8-bit memory bus are called *PC/XT* systems after the pioneering IBM PC and IBM PC/XT. As you can see in Table 2.2, the differences between these systems and descendants of the IBM AT (16-bit memory bus and above) are significant. All modern systems fall into the AT category.

Table 2.2 Differences Between PC/XT and AT Systems

System Attributes PC/XT Type	8-Bit	16-, 32-, 64-Bit AT Type
Supported processors	All x86 or x88	286 or higher
Processor modes	Real	Real, Protected, Virtual Real ²
Software supported	16-bit only	16- or 32-bit ²
Bus slot width	8-bit	16-, 32-, ³ and 64-bit ⁴
Slot type	ISA only	ISA, EISA ¹ , MCA, PC-Card, Cardbus ³ , VL-Bus ³ , PCI ³ , AGP ⁴
Hardware interrupts	8 (6 usable)	16 (11 usable)
DMA channels	4 (3 usable)	8 (7 usable)
Maximum RAM	1MB	16MB/4GB ¹ or more
Floppy controller speed	250 Kbit/sec	250, 300, 500, and 1,000 Kbit/sec
Standard boot drive	360KB or 720KB	1.2M, 1.44MB, and 2.88MB
Keyboard interface	Unidirectional	Bidirectional
CMOS memory/clock	None standard	MC146818-compatible
Serial-port UART	8250B	16450/16550A or better

1. Requires 386DX-based system or above
2. Requires 386SX-based system or above
3. Requires 486SX-based system or above
4. Requires Pentium-based system or above

Intel and Compatible Processor Specifications

See Tables 2.3 and 2.4 to help determine the features of any CPU you encounter. It might be necessary to remove the heat sink or fan to see the processor markings on an older system, but many recent systems display CPU identification and speeds at startup.

Table 2.4 shows the major Pentium-class CPUs made by companies other than Intel. The newest versions of these processors can often be used to upgrade an older Pentium—as long as proper voltage and system configuration information can be provided, either through adjusting the motherboard/BIOS settings or by purchasing an upgrade-type processor with third-party support.

Footnotes for both tables follow Table 2.4.

Table 2.3 Intel Processor Specifications

Processor	CPU Clock	Voltage	Internal Register Size	Data Bus Width
8088	1x	5v	16-bit	8-bit
8086	1x	5v	16-bit	16-bit
286	1x	5v	16-bit	16-bit
386SX	1x	5v	32-bit	16-bit
386SL	1x	3.3v	32-bit	16-bit
386DX	1x	5v	32-bit	32-bit
486SX	1x	5v	32-bit	32-bit
486SX2	2x	5v	32-bit	32-bit
487SX	1x	5v	32-bit	32-bit
486DX	1x	5v	32-bit	32-bit
486SL ²	1x	3.3v	32-bit	32-bit
486DX2	2x	5v	32-bit	32-bit
486DX4	2–3x	3.3v	32-bit	32-bit
486Pentium OD	2.5x	5v	32-bit	32-bit
Pentium 60/66	1x	5v	32-bit	64-bit
Pentium 75-200	1.5–3x	3.3-3.5v	32-bit	64-bit
Pentium MMX	1.5–4.5x	1.8–2.8v	32-bit	64-bit
Pentium Pro	2–3x	3.3v	32-bit	64-bit
Pentium II	3.5–4.5x	1.8–2.8v	32-bit	64-bit
Celeron	3.5–4.5x	1.8–2.8v	32-bit	64-bit
Celeron A	3.5–7x	1.8–2v	32-bit	64-bit
Pentium II PE ¹	3.5–6x	1.6v	32-bit	64-bit
Pentium II Xeon	4–4.5x	1.8–2.8v	32-bit	64-bit
Pentium III Slot1	4.5–7.5x	1.8–2v	32-bit	64-bit
Pentium III PGA370	4–7x	1.8–2v	32-bit	64-bit
Pentium III Xeon	5–6.5x	varies	32-bit	64-bit

Max. Memory	Level 1 Cache	L1 Cache Type	L2 Cache	L2 Cache Speed	Special Features
1MB	—	—	—	—	—
1MB	—	—	—	—	—
16MB	—	—	—	—	—
16MB	—	—	—	Bus	—
16MB	0KB ¹	WT	—	Bus	—
4GB	—	—	—	Bus	—
4GB	8KB	WT	—	Bus	—
4GB	8KB	WT	—	Bus	—
4GB	8KB	WT	—	Bus	FPU
4GB	8KB	WT	—	Bus	FPU
4GB	8KB	WT	—	Bus	FPU Opt.
4GB	8KB	WT	—	Bus	FPU
4GB	16KB	WT	—	Bus	FPU
4GB	2x16KB	WB	—	Bus	FPU
4GB	2x8KB	WB	—	Bus	FPU
4GB	2x8KB	WB	—	Bus	FPU
4GB	2x16KB	WB	—	Bus	FPU, MMX
64GB	2x8KB	WB	256KB, 512KB, 1MB	Core	FPU
64GB	2x16KB	WB	512KB	1/2 Core	FPU, MMX
64GB	2x16KB	WB	0KB	—	FPU, MMX
64GB	2x16KB	WB	128KB	Core	FPU, MMX
64GB	2x16KB	WB	256KB	Core	FPU, MMX
64GB	2x16KB	WB	512KB, 1MB, 2MB	Core	FPU, MMX
64GB	2x16KB	WB	512KB	1/2 Core	FPU, SSE
64GB	2x16KB	WB	256KB	Core	FPU, SSE
64GB	2x16KB	WB	512KB, 1MB, 2MB	Core	FPU, SSE

Table 2.4 Intel-Compatible Pentium-Class Processors

Processor	CPU Clock	Voltage	Internal Register Size	Data Bus Width	Max. Memory
AMD K5	1.5–1.75x	3.5v	32-bit	64-bit	4GB
AMD K6	2.5–4.5x	2.2–3.2v	32-bit	64-bit	4GB
AMD K6-2	2.5–6x	1.9–2.4v	32-bit	64-bit	4GB
AMD K6-3	3.5–4.5x	1.8–2.4v	32-bit	64-bit	4GB
AMD Athlon (nee K7)	5–10x ¹⁰	1.6–1.8v	32-bit	64-bit	8TB
AMD Athlon, with performance enhancing cache (PEC) (code name “Thunderbird”)	5–10x ¹⁰	1.8v	32-bit	64-bit	8TB
AMD Duron ⁹ “Thunderbird”	6x–7.5x ¹⁰	1.6–1.8v	32-bit	64-bit	8TB
Cyrix 6x86	2x	2.5–3.5v	32-bit	64-bit	4GB
Cyrix 6x86MX/MII	2–3.5x	2.2–2.9v	32-bit	64-bit	4GB
VIA Cyrix III	2.5–7x	2.2v	32-bit	64-bit	4GB
Nexgen Nx586	2x	4v	32-bit	64-bit	4GB
IDT Winchip	3–4x	3.3–3.5v	32-bit	64-bit	4GB
IDT Winchip2/2A	2.33–4x	3.3–3.5v	32-bit	64-bit	4GB
Rise mP6	2–3.5x	2.8v	32-bit	64-bit	4GB

FPU = Floating-Point unit (internal math coprocessor)

WT = Write-through cache (caches reads only)

WB = Write-back cache (caches both reads and writes)

Bus = Processor external bus speed (motherboard speed)

Core = Processor internal core speed (CPU speed)

MMX = Multimedia extensions, 57 additional instructions for graphics and sound processing

3DNow = MMX plus 21 additional instructions for graphics and sound processing

SSE = Streaming SIMD (Single Instruction Multiple Data) Extensions, MMX plus 70 additional instructions for graphics and sound processing

1. The 386SL contains an integral-cache controller, but the cache memory must be provided outside the chip.
2. Intel later marketed SL Enhanced versions of the SX, DX, and DX2 processors. These processors were available in both 5v and 3.3v versions and included power-management capabilities.
3. The Enhanced mobile PII has an on-die L2 cache similar to the Celeron.

Level 1 Cache	L1 Cache Type	Level 2 Cache	L2 Cache Speed	Special Features	Similar to ⁴
16+8KB	WB	—	Bus	FPU	Pentium
2x32KB	WB	—	Bus	FPU, MMX	Pentium MMX
2x32KB	WB	—	Bus	FPU, 3DNow	Pentium MMX
2x32KB	WB	256KB	Core	FPU, 3DNow	Pentium MMX
2x64KB	WB	512KB ⁶	1/3 ⁷ Core	FPU, 3DNow	Pentium III ⁸
2x64KB	WB	256KB	Core	FPU, 3DNow	Pentium III
2x64KB	WB	64KB	Core	FPU, 3DNow	Athlon PEC
16KB	WB	—	Bus	FPU	Pentium
64KB	WB	—	Bus	FPU, MMX	Pentium MMX
64KB	WB	256KB	Core		
2x16KB	WB	—	Bus	FPU	Pentium ⁵
2x32KB	WB	—	Bus	FPU, MMX	Pentium MMX
2x32KB	WB	—	Bus	FPU, 3DNow	AMD K6-2
2x8KB	WB	—	Bus	FPU, MMX	Pentium MMX

4. These processors physically fit into the same Socket 7 used by Intel Pentium 75MHz and above models except as noted, but might require special chipsets or BIOS settings for best operation. Check with motherboard and chip mfr. before installing them in place of your existing Pentium-class chip.

5. Pentium-class performance, but unique, non-standard pinout.

6. Cache size for initial shipments (3rd Q 1999). Athlon designed it to allow cache sizes up to 8MB.

7. Athlon's cache interface is designed to handle variable speed ratios, so later versions can run L2 cache more quickly.

8. Athlon uses new AMD Slot A, physically similar to Slot 1 but with a different electrical pinout.

9. Duron and "Thunderbird" versions of Athlon use new Socket A.

10. Clock Multipliers listed based on 100MHz system bus (FSB) speeds; although Athlon and Duron use 200MHz bus, memory for these systems runs at PC100 or PC133 speeds, depending on the processor model.

Use Tables 2.5 and 2.6 to help determine which processors *may* fit in place of your existing CPU. Note that a replacement CPU must have the same pinout, the same electrical requirements, and be compatible with your motherboard. Many vendors sell upgrade-compatible processor versions, which have been modified from their original forms by adding a voltage regulator and other support options.

Table 2.5 Intel and Compatibles 486/Pentium-Class CPU Socket Types and Specifications

Socket Number	Pins	Pin Layout	Voltage	Supported Processors
Socket 1	169	17×17 PGA	5v	486 SX/SX2, DX/DX2 ¹ , DX4 OverDrive
Socket 2	238	19×19 PGA	5v	486 SX/SX2, DX/DX2 ¹ , DX4 OverDrive, 486 Pentium OverDrive
Socket 3	237	19×19 PGA	5v/3.3v	486 SX/SX2, DX/DX2, DX4, 486 Pentium OverDrive, AMD 5x86, Cyrix 5x86
Socket 4	273	21×21 PGA	5v	Pentium 60/66, OverDrive
Socket 5	320	37×37 SPGA	3.3/3.5v	Pentium 75-133, OverDrive
Socket 6 ²	235	19×19 PGA	3.3v	486 DX4, 486 Pentium OverDrive
Socket 7	321	37×37 SPGA	VRM	Pentium 75-233+, MMX, OverDrive, AMD K5/K6, Cyrix M1, VIA Cyrix MII
Socket 8	387	dual pattern SPGA	Auto VRM	Pentium Pro
PGA370	370	37×37 SPGA	2.0v	Celeron, Pentium III, VIA Cyrix III
Slot 1	242	Slot	Auto VRM	Pentium II/III, Celeron
Slot 2	330	Slot	Auto VRM	Pentium II Xeon/ Pentium III Xeon
Slot A	242	Slot	Auto VRM	AMD Athlon (K7) SECC
Socket A	462	SPGA	Auto VRM	AMD Duron/AMD Athlon PGA

1. Non-overdrive DX4 or AMD 5x86 also can be supported with the addition of an aftermarket 3.3v voltage-regulator adapter.

2. Socket 6 was a paper standard only and was never actually implemented in any systems.

PGA = Pin Grid Array.

SPGA = Staggered Pin Grid Array.

VRM = Voltage Regulator Module.

Table 2.6 lists the fastest processors you can install according to the socket type in your system. Note that newer socket designs allow faster processors, but that the bus speed and clock multiplier settings of your motherboard are also limiting factors for some CPU types.

Table 2.6 Maximum Processor Speeds by Socket	
Socket Type	Fastest Processor Supported
Socket 1	5x86-133MHz with 3.3v adapter
Socket 2	5x86-133MHz with 3.3v adapter
Socket 3	5x86-133MHz
Socket 4	Pentium OverDrive 133MHz
Socket 5	Pentium MMX 233MHz or AMD K6 with 2.8v adapter
Socket 7	AMD K6-2 up to 550MHz, K6-III up to 500MHz
Socket 8	Pentium Pro OverDrive (333MHz Pentium II performance)
Slot 1	Celeron 400MHz (66MHz bus)
Slot 1	Pentium III 850MHz (100MHz bus)
Slot 1	Pentium III 1.0GHz (133MHz bus)
Slot 2	Pentium III Xeon 550MHz (100MHz bus)
Slot 2	Pentium III Xeon 866MHz (133MHz bus)
Socket 370	Celeron 600MHz (66MHz bus)
Socket 370	Pentium III 933MHz (100MHz bus)
Slot A	1GHz AMD Athlon (K7) (200MHz bus), 1GHz AMD Athlon PEC (Thunderbird)
Socket A	750MHz AMD Duron (200MHz bus), 1GHz AMD Athlon PEC (Thunderbird)

Troubleshooting Processor Problems

Table 2.7 provides a general troubleshooting checklist for processor-related PC problems.

Table 2.7 Troubleshooting Processor-Related Problems

Problem Identification	Possible Cause	Resolution
System is dead, no cursor, no beeps, or no fan.	Power cord failure. Power supply failure. Motherboard failure. Memory failure.	Plug in or replace power cord. Power cords can fail even though they look fine. Replace the power supply. Use a known, good spare for testing. Replace motherboard. Use a known, good spare for testing. Remove all memory except one bank and retest. If the system still won't boot, replace bank 1.
System is dead, no beeps, or locks up before POST begins.	All components either not installed or incorrectly installed.	Check all peripherals, especially memory and graphics adapter. Reseat all boards and socketed components, such as CPUs and memory modules.
System beeps on startup, fan is running, no cursor onscreen.	Improperly seated or failing graphics adapter.	Reseat or replace graphics adapter. Use known, good spare for testing.
Locks up during or shortly after POST.	Poor heat dissipation. Improper voltage settings. Wrong motherboard bus speed. Wrong CPU clock multiplier.	Check CPU heat sink/fan; replace if necessary, using one with a higher capacity. Use thermal paste between fan/heatsink and CPU as directed by heatsink and CPU vendors. Set motherboard for proper core processor voltage. Set motherboard for proper speed. Jumper motherboard for proper clock multiplier.
Improper CPU identification during POST.	Old BIOS. Board not configured properly.	Update BIOS from manufacturer. Check manual and jumper board according to proper bus and multiplier settings. If board is jumperless, adjust bus and multiplier in BIOS.

Table 2.7 Troubleshooting Processor-Related Problems Continued

Problem Identification	Possible Cause	Resolution
Operating system will not boot.	Poor heat dissipation.	Check CPU fan; replace if necessary. May need higher capacity heat sink and thermal paste.
	Improper voltage settings.	Jumper motherboard for proper core voltage.
	Wrong motherboard bus speed.	Jumper motherboard or adjust BIOS settings to correct speed.
	Wrong CPU clock multiplier.	Jumper motherboard or adjust BIOS settings to correct multiplier.
	Applications will not install or run.	Improper drivers or incompatible hardware. Update drivers and check for compatibility issues.
System appears to work but no video is displayed	Monitor turned off or failed.	Check monitor and power to monitor. Replace with known-good spare for testing.

If, during POST, the processor is not identified correctly, your motherboard settings might be incorrect or your BIOS might need to be updated. Check that the motherboard is jumpered or configured correctly for the processor that you have, and make sure that you have the latest BIOS for your motherboard.

If the system seems to run erratically after it warms up, try setting the processor to a lower speed. If the problem goes away, the processor might be defective or overclocked.

Many hardware problems are really software problems in disguise. Be sure you have the latest BIOS for your motherboard and the latest drivers for your peripherals. Also, it helps to use the latest version of your given operating system because, normally, fewer problems will occur.

Note

For more information about processors, see Chapter 3 of *Upgrading and Repairing PCs, 12th Edition*, also published by Que.

Motherboard Form Factors

Although many PC users have extended the life span of their systems by changing the CPU, any system that will be kept for a long time could be a candidate for a motherboard replacement. Use the following charts to determine whether your system uses one of

these standard form factors, which will allow you the choice of many vendors for a replacement. A replacement motherboard provides you with these benefits:

- Access to faster, more advanced CPUs
- “Free” updated BIOS with support for large hard drives; Y2K; and boot from LS-120, Zip, and CD-ROM drives
- Newer I/O features, such as USB ports, UDMA-66 hard disk interfacing, and AGP video

Baby-AT Motherboard

Until mid-1996, this descendent of the original IBM/XT motherboard was the dominant design. Even though limited numbers of these motherboards are still available for use with both Pentium-class and Pentium II/III/Celeron processors, the lack of built-in ports and cooling problems make this an obsolete design. If you are trying to upgrade a system that uses this motherboard design, consider purchasing a new ATX-style case, power supply, and motherboard. In addition, you should consider moving the CPU, RAM, drives, and cards from your existing system to the new box (see Figure 2.1).

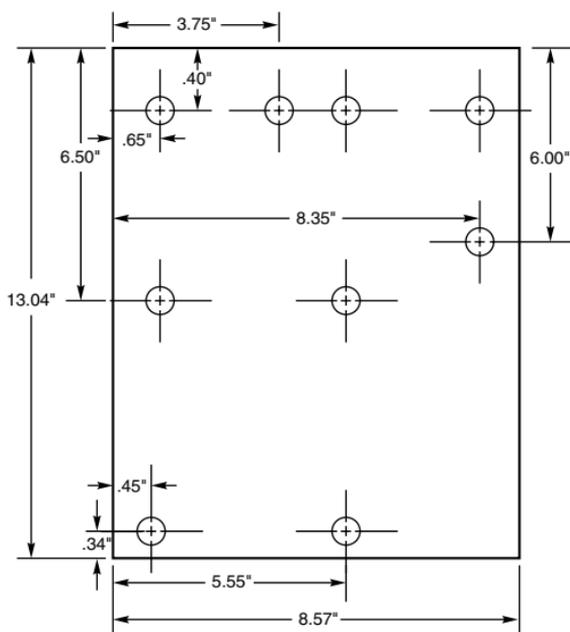


Figure 2.1 Baby-AT motherboard form factor dimensions.

LPX Motherboard

Since 1987, many low-cost systems have used variations on this layout, which features a single slot used for a riser card. The expansion cards for video, audio, and so forth are connected to the riser card, not the motherboard. Most LPX systems use riser cards that mount the expansion slots parallel to the motherboard; some use a T-shaped riser card that keeps the expansion slots at their normal upright position. Additionally, most LPX systems have built-in video, audio, and other I/O ports. Unfortunately, because its details were never standardized, it is virtually impossible to upgrade. Systems with this motherboard are essentially disposable (see Figure 2.2).

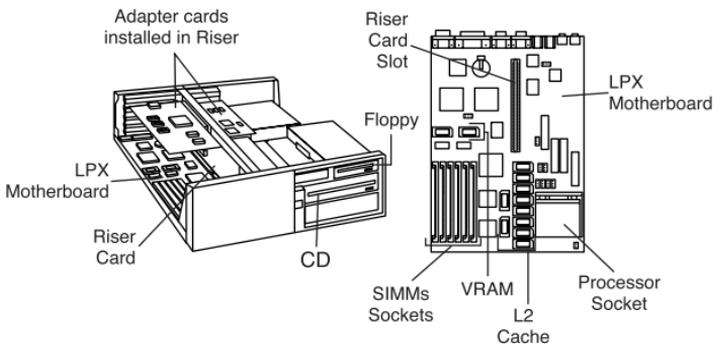


Figure 2.2 Typical LPX system chassis and motherboard.

ATX Motherboard

Since mid-1996, the ATX motherboard has become the standard for most systems using non-proprietary motherboards (see Figure 2.3). Similar to Baby-AT, it's also an industry standard, and similar to LPX, it features built-in ports. Compared to both, though, it offers much greater ease of upgrading and servicing. ATX motherboards are rotated 90 degrees when compared to Baby-ATs and also use a different power supply for advanced power management features. Because of their built-in ports and differences in layout, ATX motherboards require an ATX case. ATX cases can also be used for Baby-AT motherboards, though. Figure 2.3 shows a full-size ATX layout; however, several smaller versions now exist, including mini-ATX, micro-ATX, and flex-ATX.

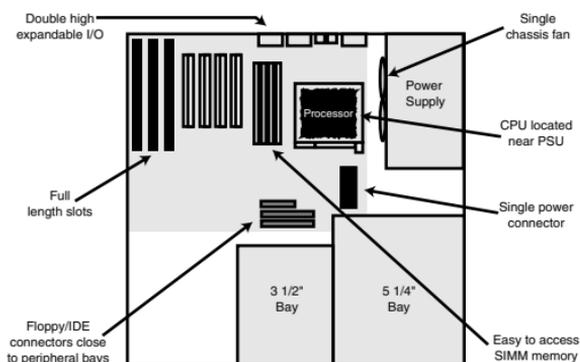


Figure 2.3 ATX system chassis layout and features.

NLX Motherboard

The replacement for the old LPX low-profile motherboard is the NLX motherboard (see Figure 2.4). NLX also features built-in ports and a riser card, but its standard design means that replacement motherboards should be easier to purchase than those for LPX systems. A major advantage of NLX systems is that the motherboard is easy to remove for servicing through a side panel, a feature that makes NLX-based systems popular as corporate network client PCs.

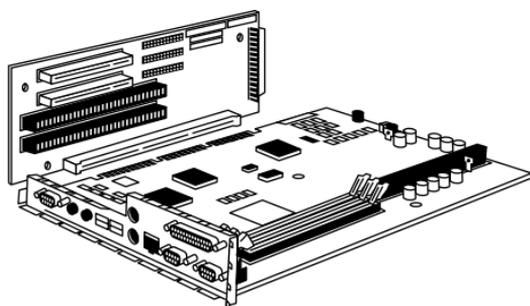


Figure 2.4 NLX motherboard and riser combination.

Which Motherboard Is Which?

Use Table 2.8 to help determine whether a system is a Baby-AT, an LPX, an ATX, or an NLX-based system.

Table 2.8 Comparison of Major Motherboard Form Factors

	Baby-AT	LPX	ATX/ Micro ATX¹	NLX	WTX
Ports built into chassis	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	No ²
Riser card	No	Yes	No	Yes	No
Single row of ports at rear	N/A	Yes	No	No	No
Two rows of ports at rear	N/A	No	Yes	Yes	No ³
Slots on both sides of riser card	N/A	Opt	N/A	No	N/A
Riser card location on MB	N/A	Middle	N/A	Side near power supply	N/A

- MicroATX motherboards can fit into ATX cases, but have fewer slots and are designed for socketed, rather than slot-based, processors. They also usually feature onboard audio and video, both of which are usually optional on ATX motherboards.*
- WTX supports a FlexSlot design, which uses a single modified PCI slot for all standard ports.*
- The layout of ports on the rear of a FlexSlot resembles the layout on the rear of an ATX or a MicroATX motherboard, but they are vertically oriented because they are attached to a FlexSlot. See www.wtx.org for more information.*

PC99 Color-Coding for Ports

Microsoft and Intel have developed the following standardized color-coding of connectors for computers compliant with the PC99 design standards. Use Table 2.9 to help you match non-color-coded peripherals with the correct external ports.

Note

Some systems, especially those built before 1999, might use a proprietary color scheme for ports.

Check the inside front and back covers of this book for pictures of these ports. For color samples, see the following Web site:

<http://www.pcdesguide.com/documents/pc99icons.htm>

Table 2.9 PC99 Color-Coding Standards for Ports

Port Type	Color
Analog VGA (DB15)	Blue
Audio line in	Light blue
Audio line out	Lime green
Digital monitor	White

Table 2.9 PC99 Color-Coding Standards for Ports Continued

Port Type	Color
IEEE-1394 (i.Link, FireWire)	Grey
Microphone	Pink
MIDI/Gameport	Gold
Parallel port	Burgundy
Serial port	Teal or turquoise
Speaker out (subwoofer)	Orange
Right-to-left speaker	Brown
USB	Black
Video out	Yellow
SCSI, network, telephone, modem, and so on	None

Power Supplies

Power supplies actually convert high-voltage AC (alternating current) into low-voltage DC (direct current) for use by PCs. Power supplies come in several form factors, and they also feature various motherboard connectors to correspond with the newer motherboard designs on the market. Table 2.10 illustrates which power supplies are most likely to be used with various motherboards.

Table 2.10 Matching Power Supplies and Motherboards

Motherboard Form Factor	Most Common PS Form Factor Used	Other PS Form Factors Used
Baby-AT	LPX style	Baby-AT, AT/Tower, or AT/Desk
LPX	LPX style	None
ATX	ATX style	None
MicroATX	ATX style	SFX style
NLX	ATX style	None

LPX Versus ATX Power Supplies

Some motherboards are designed to handle either LPX or ATX power supplies. The ATX is the preferred design because it provides the lower voltage needed by today's CPUs, offers foolproof installation, and also provides better cooling than older designs.

Table 2.11 compares two of the more common power supply form factors used in computers today, and Figure 2.5 shows an LPX power supply.

Table 2.11 Comparing ATX and LPX Power Supplies			
Power Supply Type	Voltage Output	Motherboard Power Connectors	Other Features Notes
LPX	5v, 12v	2–6 pins each (P8/P9)	Easy to reverse the plug due to poor keying
ATX	3.3v, 5v, 12v	1–20 pins	Keyed to go in only one way; allows hibernation via operating system or keyboard command

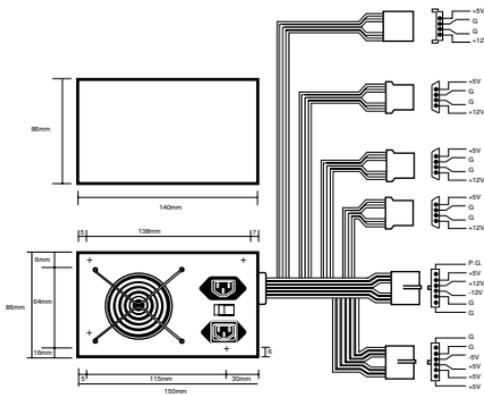


Figure 2.5 LPX form factor power supply.

Table 2.12 breaks down the typical LPX power supply connector.

Caution

To get the cables oriented correctly, keep the ground wires (black) next to each other. Although most connectors are keyed to prevent improperly plugging them in, some connectors can easily be inserted incorrectly. This will cause your motherboard to be destroyed the first time you switch on the power and could possibly cause a fire.

Table 2.12 Typical LPX Power Supply Connections

Connector	Voltage	Standard Color/Notes
P8-1	Power_Good (+5v)	Orange
P8-2	+5v	Red
P8-3	+12v	Yellow
P8-4	-12v	Blue
P8-5	Ground (0)	Black
P8-6	Ground (0)	Black
P9-1	Ground (0)	Black
P9-2	Ground (0)	Black
P9-3	-5v	White
P9-4	+5v	Red
P9-5	+5v	Red
P9-6	+5v	Red

Power Connectors for the Drive(s)

The connectors shown in Table 2.13 might not be labeled, but they easily can be distinguished by the four-wire cable and color-coding. The same colors are used for drive power connectors on ATX power supplies. Figure 2.6 shows an ATX power supply.

Table 2.13 ATX Power Supply Color Coding

Connector	Voltage	Standard Color/Notes
P10-1	+12v	Yellow
P10-2	Ground (0)	Black
P10-3	Ground (0)	Black
P10-4	+5v	Red

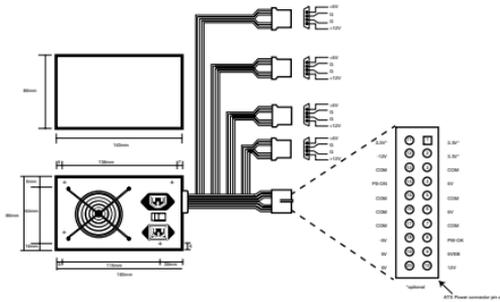


Figure 2.6 ATX form factor power supply used with both ATX and NLX systems. The pinout for the motherboard power is shown at lower right. Note the single square pin used for keying.

Table 2.14 shows the pinout for the ATX motherboard power connector.

Table 2.14 ATX Motherboard Power Supply Connections					
Color	Signal	Pin	Pin	Signal	Color
Orange	+3.3v	11	1	+3.3v	Orange
Blue	-12v	12	2	+3.3v	Orange
Black	GND	13	3	GND	Black
Green	PS_On	14	4	+5v	Red
Black	GND	15	5	GND	Black
Black	GND	16	6	+5v	Red
Black	GND	17	7	GND	Black
White	-5v	18	8	Power_Good	Grey
Red	+5v	19	9	+5VSB (Standby)	Purple
Red	+5v	20	10	+12v	Yellow

Quick-Reference Chart for Troubleshooting Power Supplies

Table 2.15 Troubleshooting Power Supplies		
Symptom	Cause(s)	Tests and Solution(s)
Overheating.	Inadequate system cooling	Check ventilation around system; clean system internally; check for missing slot covers.
	Higher load on system in watts than power supply rating	Replace power supply with higher rated unit.

Table 2.15 Troubleshooting Power Supplies Continued

Symptom	Cause(s)	Tests and Solution(s)
System reboots itself.	Incorrect power level on Power_Good; can indicate overloaded power supply or otherwise bad unit	Use DC-voltage digital multimeter (DMM) to test P8-1 (orange wire) on LPX and older power supplies or Pin 8 (gray wire) on ATX and newer power supplies; rated voltage is +5v; acceptable is +3.0v to +6.0v. Replace failed power supply with higher rated unit.
Fan turns for only a moment and then stops.	Wrong voltage (PS set to 220/230v in U.S.) Dead short in system	Turn off system; reset PS to correct voltage (110/115v in U.S.) and restart. Using 220/230v power on a PS set for 110/115v will destroy it! Short can be caused by loose screws, failed hard drives, or add-on cards. Turn off and unplug system; disconnect hard drive and see whether system starts. If system still fails, plug in drive and remove add-on card; repeat until each card and drive has been checked; also check Y-adapter cables because bad cables can cause shorts. Replace faulty component(s).

Note

For more information on power supplies, wattage ratings, and testing, see Chapter 21 of *Upgrading and Repairing PCs, 12th Edition*, published by Que.

Memory Types

RAM (random access memory) provides the work area that processors use to create and modify data. While RAM was sometimes found on expansion boards on old XT-class and early AT-class systems, all standard 486-based and Pentium-class systems have their memory modules attached to the motherboard.

Memory modules come in two major forms: SIMMs and DIMMs. *SIMM* stands for single-sided inline memory module, and *DIMM* stands for dual-sided inline memory module. These terms refer to the pin configurations used on the module, rather than the location of the memory chips on the module.

The following features are common to all SIMMs:

- Pins numbered from left to right
- Same pins on both sides of the module

Tip

Note that all dimensions for both SIMMs and DIMMs in the following figures are in both inches and millimeters (in parentheses).

30-Pin SIMM

The 30-pin SIMM is the oldest type of memory module still in use (see Figure 2.7). It was popular on 386-based and early 486-based systems, but became obsolete with the rise of Pentium-class 64-bit CPUs. Although its capacities are extremely small compared to more modern memory designs, its unpopularity since the early 1990s makes the 30-pin SIMM the most expensive memory type per megabyte. If you are still supporting systems that use this type of module, look for sources of used memory or replace the motherboard with one that uses newer, 72-pin SIMM or DIMM memory instead of buying new 30-pin modules.

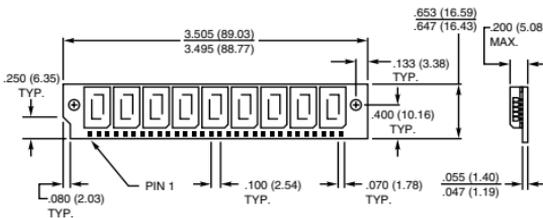


Figure 2.7 A typical 30-pin SIMM. The one shown here is 9-bit, although the dimensions would be the same for 8-bit.

72-Pin SIMM

The 72-pin SIMM was the most popular for a number of years, but has now been superseded on newer systems by DIMM modules. 72-pin SIMMs are commonly found on late-model 486-based systems, most Pentiums, and most early Pentium-compatible systems. Because these modules are also becoming very expensive per megabyte, try to salvage or swap memory to populate older systems rather than purchase new. 72-pin SIMMs can be either fast-page or extended data out (EDO). 486-class systems can use only fast-page SIMMs, but Pentium-class systems that use SIMMs can use either type. Fast-page and EDO SIMMs should not be mixed. Some

systems require BIOS configuration to optimize performance if you install EDO memory (see Figure 2.8).

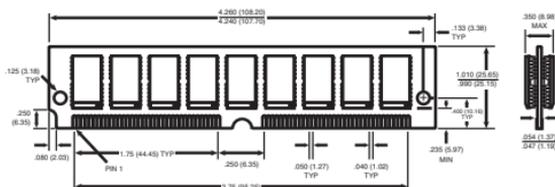


Figure 2.8 A typical 72-pin SIMM, although the dimensions would be the same for 32-bit.

DIMMs

DIMMs became popular with the rise of the Pentium II/III/Celeron family of processors—AMD’s Athlon series—and can also be found on many late-model Pentium and “Super Socket 7” motherboards used with AMD K6-series and Cyrix 6x86MX/MII processors (see Figure 2.9). DIMMs are the most popular and fastest type of memory module in widespread use. Most DIMMs are Synchronous DRAM (SDRAM). On motherboards with both SIMM and DIMM sockets, SDRAMs cannot be used in conjunction with SIMMs, but the relatively rare EDO DIMMs can be used along with EDO SIMMs.

The following features are common to all DIMMs:

- Three edge connectors of varying widths for positive keying
- Different pinouts on each side of the DIMM

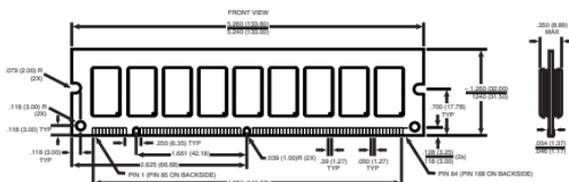


Figure 2.9 A typical 168-pin DIMM. The one shown here is 72-bit, although the dimensions would be the same for 64-bit.

RDRAM

The *RDRAM*, or *Rambus DRAM*, is a radical new memory design that is slowly appearing in high-end PC systems that use Intel chipsets. RDRAM differs from previous memory devices in that it provides multiple high-speed (800MHz), narrow-channel (16-bit-wide) data

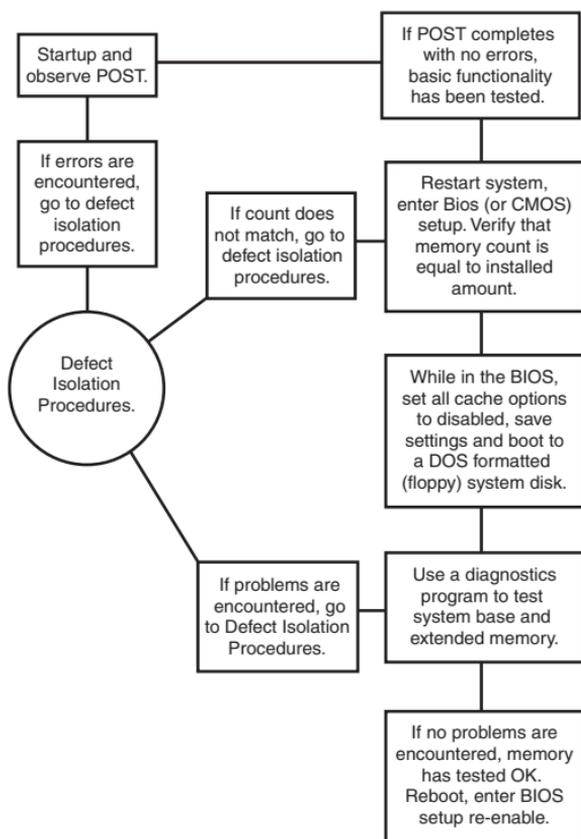


Figure 2.11 184-pin DDR (Double Data Rate) SDRAM DIMM.

DDR DIMMs are rated for either PC200 (100MHz x 2) or PC266 (133MHz x 2) operation and normally run on 2.5 volts. They are basically an extension of the PC100 and PC133 DIMMs redesigned to support double clocking, where data is sent on each clock transition (twice per cycle) rather than once per cycle as is standard with SDRAM.

Parity Versus Non-Parity Memory

Parity-checked RAM uses units of 8 memory bits plus 1 parity bit, for a total of 9 bits. In addition, parity checking uses both the data bits and the parity bit to ensure that memory contents are accurate with each memory access.

Virtually all 386-based and older systems, and most 486-based systems, require parity-checked memory, which can detect, but not correct, memory errors. On the other hand, most Pentium-class

and higher systems don't require parity-checked RAM, but will ignore the parity bit(s) if present.

Parity-checked memory *must* be used on systems that require it, and *should* be used on systems that can be configured to use the parity bits, *especially* if the systems support ECC (Error Correction Code) operation, which uses the parity bit as a means of *correcting* a faulty memory bit.

Requirements for ECC Memory Use

ECC requires the following:

- Parity-checked memory modules
- A motherboard chipset that offers ECC support
- ECC support enabled in the BIOS system configuration

ECC operation is recommended for servers and other systems that are performing mission-critical tasks because ECC operation can correct single-bit memory errors. Larger memory errors will cause the system to display an error message and halt.

However, systems using ECC will cost more due to the higher cost of parity-checked RAM. Additionally, system performance is slightly slower due to the extra time involved in ECC operation. Check your motherboard or system documentation to determine whether ECC is an option for your system.

To determine whether a memory module supports parity-checking or ECC, use the following tips.

Using the Divide by 3 Rule to Determine Parity Support

Count the chips on a SIMM or DIMM. If you can divide the number of chips by 3, the module is most likely a parity-checked module. However, some memory manufacturers have created memory modules with fake parity chips; these are referred to as *logic parity* modules.

Note

See *Upgrading and Repairing PCs, 12th Edition*, Chapter 6, for more information about how to detect a logic parity module.

Using the Divide by 9 Rule to Determine Parity Support

A similar “divide by 9” rule can also be used to determine parity checking if you know the number of memory bits in the module. Note in Table 2.16 that the number of bits in parity-checked

modules can be divided by 9, but the number of bits in non-parity modules can be divided only by 8.

Table 2.16 SIMM and DIMM Capacities

<i>30-Pin SIMM Capacities</i>		
Capacity	Parity SIMM	Non-Parity SIMM
256KB	256KB×9	256KB×8
1MB	1MB×9	1MB×8
4MB	4MB×9	4MB×8
16MB	16MB×9	16MB×8
<i>72-Pin SIMM Capacities</i>		
Capacity	Parity SIMM	Non-Parity SIMM
1MB	256KB×36	256KB×32
2MB	512KB×36	512KB×32
4MB	1MB×36	1MB×32
8MB	2MB×36	2MB×32
16MB	4MB×36	4MB×32
32MB	8MB×36	8MB×32
64MB	16MB×36	16MB×32
128MB	32MB×36	32MB×32
<i>168-Pin DIMM Capacities</i>		
Capacity	Parity DIMM	Non-Parity DIMM
8MB	1MB×72	1MB×64
16MB	2MB×72	2MB×64
32MB	4MB×72	4MB×64
64MB	8MB×72	8MB×64
128MB	16MB×72	16MB×64
256MB	32MB×72	32MB×64

Expanding Memory on a System

Memory must be added to a system in banks. Simply put, a *bank* of memory is the amount of RAM in bits equal to the data bus width of the computer's CPU (see Table 2.17). Thus, a Pentium's data bus is 64 bits, and a memory module(s) used with a Pentium must have a total width of 64 bits for non-parity memory and 72 bits for parity-checked or ECC memory.

Table 2.17 Memory Bank Widths on Various Systems

Processor	Data Bus	Memory Bank Size (No Parity)	Memory Bank Size (Parity)	30-Pin SIMMs per Bank	72-Pin SIMMs per Bank	168-Pin SIMMs per Bank
8088	8-bit	8 bits	9 bits	1	n/a	n/a
8086	16-bit	16 bits	18 bits	2	n/a	n/a
286	16-bit	16 bits	18 bits	2	n/a	n/a
386SX, SL, SLC	16-bit	16 bits	18 bits	2	n/a	n/a
386DX	32-bit	32 bits	36 bits	4	1	n/a
486SLC, SLC2	16-bit	16 bits	18 bits	2	n/a	n/a
486SX, DX, DX2, DX4, 5x86	32-bit	32 bits	36 bits	4	1	n/a
Pentium, K5, K6 6x86, 6x86MX, MII	64-bit	64 bits	72 bits	8 ¹	2	1
Pentium Pro, PII, PIII, Celeron, Xeon, AMD Athlon, Duron, Intel Itanium	64-bit	64 bits	72 bits	8 ¹	2	1

1. Very few motherboards for these processors actually use this type of memory.

The number of bits for each bank can be made up of single chips, SIMMs, or DIMMs. Modern systems don't use individual chips; instead, they use only SIMMs or DIMMs. If the system has a 16-bit processor, such as a 386SX, it probably uses 30-pin SIMMs and has two SIMMs per bank. All the SIMMs in a single bank must be the same size and type.

Memory Troubleshooting

Figure 2.12 provides basic steps that enable you to effectively test and troubleshoot your system RAM. First, let's cover the memory testing and troubleshooting procedures.

After you've determined that the system's memory is defective, you need to determine which memory module is at fault. Follow the procedure in Figure 2.13 to isolate the module for replacement.

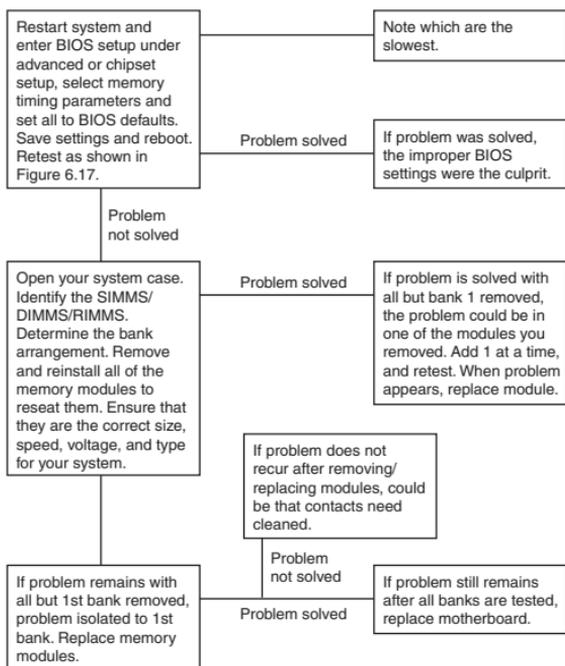


Figure 2.12 Testing and troubleshooting memory.

Memory Usage Within the System

The original PC had a total of 1MB of addressable memory, and the top 384KB of that was reserved for use by the system. Placing this reserved space at the top (between 640KB and 1,024KB instead of at the bottom, between 0KB and 640KB) led to what is often called the *conventional memory barrier*. Systems with more than 1MB of RAM treat the additional RAM as extended memory, beginning at 1MB.

Thus, there is a “hole” in memory usage between 640KB and 1MB. Some standard add-on cards and motherboard devices use part of this memory area for RAM and ROM addresses, leaving the remainder of this space free for additional card usage.

Hardware and Firmware Devices That Use Memory Addresses

The listing of hardware and firmware devices that use memory addresses is relatively short when compared to IRQ, DMA, and I/O port address usage, but it is no less important. No two devices can share a memory address. Table 2.18 shows memory usage in the 640KB–1MB memory range for standard devices.

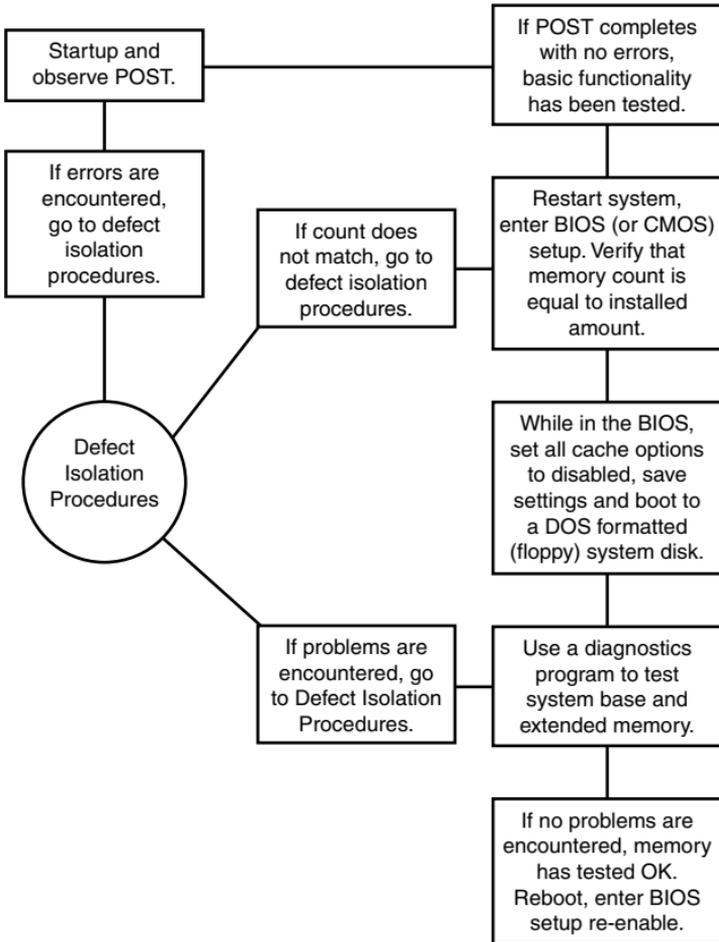


Figure 2.13 Follow these steps if you are still encountering memory errors after completing the steps in Figure 2.12.

Table 2.18 Memory Usage in the 640KB–1MB Range

Device	Address Range	Notes
Graphics Mode Video RAM	0A0000–0AFFFF	
Monochrome Text Mode Video RAM	0B0000–0B7FFF	
Color Text Mode Video RAM	0B8000–0BFFFF	
Video ROM for VGA, Super VGA	0C0000–0C7FFF	

Table 2.18 Memory Usage in the 640KB–1MB Range Continued

Device	Address Range	Notes
Unassigned	0C8000–0DFFFF	Available for use by BIOS or RAM chips on add-on cards or by memory managers, such as QEMM or EMM386
Motherboard ROM BIOS extension (IBM PS/2s, most Pentium-class and newer systems)	0E0000–0EFFFF	If not used by BIOS extensions, can be treated as additional unassigned space
Motherboard ROM BIOS (all systems)	0F0000–0FFFFFFF	

If you are using an add-on card that uses a ROM BIOS chip onboard to overcome IDE hard drive limitations, overcome Y2K date rollover problems, or provide support for bootable SCSI hard drives, the BIOS chips on those cards must be placed in the unassigned memory range listed earlier. If you have two or more add-on cards that use memory address ranges, for best system performance, set the cards to use adjacent memory addresses.

Table 2.19 shows the typical memory uses for some common IDE and SCSI interface cards that use ROM BIOS chips.

Table 2.19 Memory Addresses Used by Various Adapter Cards

Adapter Type	Onboard BIOS Size	BIOS Address Range
Most XT compatible controllers	8KB	0C8000–0C9FFF
Most AT controllers	None	Drivers in motherboard BIOS
Most standard IDE hard disk adapters	None	Drivers in motherboard BIOS
Most enhanced ¹ IDE hard disk adapters	16KB	0C8000–0CBFFF
Some SCSI host adapters	16KB	0C8000–0CBFFF
Some SCSI host adapters	16KB	0DC000–0DFFFF

1. This type of adapter supplements the motherboard's IDE interface by supporting drives beyond 528MB (decimal) or 504MB (binary), or beyond 8.4GB (decimal) in size. Some of these adapters can also provide Y2K-date rollover support. Cards that combine both functions might use a larger (in KB) BIOS chip.

Some older network cards also used memory addresses for RAM buffers or for ROM BIOS chips that permit diskless workstations to use a network copy of the operating system for booting. Network cards that use memory addresses are seldom used today.

Using Memory Addresses Beyond 1MB (OFFFFF)

Some older Super VGA cards, notably those from ATI, could also be set to use a 1MB extended memory address starting at 15MB for moving video data. This so-called *memory aperture* technique made the video cards using it faster, but could not be used on systems with 16MB of RAM or above. If you use a video card that uses a fixed memory aperture at 15MB on a system with less than 16MB of RAM, disable the memory aperture feature before you upgrade the RAM beyond 16MB. Some current PCI and AGP video cards also use memory apertures, but at addresses that do not interfere with today's larger amounts of system RAM.

Determining Memory Address Ranges in Use

On a system with Windows 9x, Windows 2000, or Windows Me, use the Device Manager's System Properties sheet to see overall memory address usage (see Figure 2.14).

Use add-on card documentation or a memory viewer, such as those included with AMIDIag, CheckIt, or Microsoft's MSD.EXE, to see memory usage on systems running Windows 3.1 or MS-DOS.

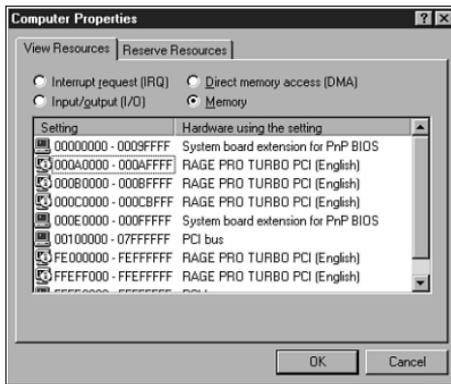


Figure 2.14 A system's upper memory usage as displayed by the Windows 9x Device Manager. Addresses between 000CCFFFF and 000DFFFF in upper memory are available for add-on cards. The ATI video card onboard also uses memory addresses above 1MB for a high-speed memory aperture.

Note

To learn more about memory modules, see Chapter 6 of *Upgrading and Repairing PCs, 12th Edition*, published by Que.

Other Add-On Card Configuration Issues

When a card is installed into an expansion slot or a PCMCIA/PC card device is installed into a PC card slot, the card must use at least one of four hardware resources to be accessible to the system. All add-on cards must use at least an I/O port address range or ranges; most cards use an IRQ (interrupt request line); fewer cards use DMA (Direct Memory Access); and memory addresses are used least of all. Many cards use two or more of these hardware resources.

Note

For more information, see the section “Hardware and Firmware Devices That Use Memory Addresses,” earlier in this chapter.

If an add-on card is set to use the same hardware resource as an existing card, it will not work unless that resource is designed to be shared between cards. Although the capability to share IRQs has existed (at least in theory) since the Micro Channel Architecture of the late 1980s, even today the best rule of thumb for adding cards is “each card has its own settings.”

Plug-and-Play (PnP) configuration—introduced with Windows 95 and also present with Windows 98, Windows Me, and Windows 2000—is designed to minimize much of the grief of adding cards, but this technology has been in a state of flux since it was introduced. To help you add cards, the following tables of standard settings also list software and hardware tools that can help you find the settings already in use before you install your next card.

IRQs

Interrupt request channels (IRQs), or hardware interrupts, are used by various hardware devices to signal the motherboard that a request must be fulfilled. Most add-on cards use IRQs, and because systems today have the same number of IRQs available with the first IBM PC/AT systems built in 1984, IRQs frequently cause trouble in add-on card installations.

Table 2.20 shows IRQ assignments for 16-bit ISA and 32-bit VL-Bus/PCI expansion slots, listed by priority. Technically speaking, PCI interrupts can be shared, but in practice, many older Pentium systems must use a unique IRQ value for each PCI card, as with ISA and VL-Bus cards.

Table 2.20 16/32-Bit ISA/VL-Bus/PCI Default Interrupt**Assignments**

IRQ	Standard Function	Bus Slot	Card Type	Recommended Use
0	System timer	No	—	—
1	Keyboard controller	No	—	—
2 ¹	Second IRQ controller cascade	No	—	—
8	Real-time clock	No	—	—
9	Available (appears as IRQ 2)	Yes	8-/16-bit	Network Interface Card
10	Available	Yes	16-bit	USB
11	Available	Yes	16-bit	SCSI host adapter
12	Motherboard mouse port available	Yes	16-bit	Motherboard mouse port
13	Math coprocessor	No	—	—
14	Primary IDE	Yes	16-bit	Primary IDE (hard disks)
15	Secondary IDE/available	Yes	16-bit	Secondary IDE (CD-ROM/ tape)
3 ⁴	Serial Port 2 (COM 2:)	Yes	8-/16-bit	COM 2:/internal modem
4 ³	Serial Port 1 (COM 1:)	Yes	8-/16-bit	COM 1:
5 ²	Sound/Parallel Port 2 (LPT2:)	Yes	8-/16-bit	Sound card
6	Floppy disk controller	Yes	8-/16-bit	Floppy controller
7	Parallel Port 1 (LPT1:)	Yes	8-/16-bit	LPT1:

1. The original IBM PC/XT and compatible systems with 8-bit ISA slots did not assign any standard device to IRQ 2. When the 16-bit ISA slot was introduced, along with a second range of IRQs (8–15), this permitted the “cascading” of these interrupts via IRQ 2. Older cards that have IRQ 2 as a setting actually use IRQ 9 instead on 286-based and higher systems.
2. On original XT-class systems with 8-bit ISA slots, IRQ 5 was assigned to the hard disk controller card. Even though IRQ 5’s “official” assignment is to handle LPT2 on systems with 16-bit ISA slots, only EPP and ECP (IEEE-1284) parallel port modes actually use an IRQ. This permits the use of IRQ 5 for sound cards in most systems without interfering with the use of LPT2.
3. Systems with COM 3 default to “sharing” COM 1’s IRQ 4. This will cause system lockups in Windows if a serial mouse is used on COM 1 with a modem on COM 3. Use the modem, and the IRQ conflict crashes the system. To avoid problems, set the device using COM 3 to a different IRQ, or disable COM 2 and use COM 2 for the modem.

4. Systems with COM 4 default to “sharing” COM 2’s IRQ 3. This will cause system lockups in Windows if a serial mouse is used on COM 2 with a modem on COM 4. Use the modem, and the IRQ conflict crashes the system. To avoid problems, set the device using COM 4 to a different IRQ, or disable COM 2 and use COM 2 for the modem.

DMA

Direct Memory Access permits high-speed data transfer between I/O devices and memory without CPU management. This method of data transfer boosts performance for devices that use it, but because there is no CPU management, the possibility of data corruption is higher than for non-DMA transfers. Although DMA channels can theoretically be “shared” between devices that are not in use at the same time, this is not a recommended practice.

PCI cards don’t use these DMA channels (with the exception of sound cards, which are emulating the ISA-based Sound Blaster or compatibles—the major users of DMA channels today). See Table 2.21.

Table 2.21 16/32-Bit ISA/PCI Default DMA-Channel Assignments

DMA	Standard Function	Bus Slot	Card Type	Transfer	Recommended Use
0	Available	Yes	16-bit	8-bit	Integrated sound
1	Available	Yes	8-/16-bit	8-bit	8-bit sound
2	Floppy disk controller	Yes	8-/16-bit	8-bit	Floppy controller
3	Available	Yes	8-/16-bit	8-bit	LPT1: in ECP mode
4	1st DMA controller cascade	No	—	16-bit	—
5	Available	Yes	16-bit	16-bit	16-bit sound
6	Available	Yes	16-bit	16-bit	ISA SCSI adapter
7	Available	Yes	16-bit	16-bit	Available

Note that PCI adapters don’t use these ISA DMA channels; these are only for ISA cards.

On PC/XT systems with only 8-bit ISA slots, only DMA channels 1–3 are available. DMA channel 2 was used for the floppy controller, as it is today, but channels 1 and 3 were not assigned to standard devices.

Determining Actual IRQ and DMA Usage

Although these tables provide the “official” guidelines for IRQ and DMA usage, these settings might not be true for all systems at all times.

Add-on network, sound, serial, parallel, and SCSI cards can often be moved to different IRQ and DMA channels to work around conflicts. Non-standard settings can be done manually with some cards and is a virtual certainty with PnP cards used with Windows 9x and Windows 2000. Well-designed PnP cards already installed in a

system are designed to automatically move to non-conflicting settings when less-flexible PnP cards are inserted. Late-model Pentium-class systems using Windows 95 OSR 2.x, Windows 98, Windows 2000, or Windows Me can also use an IRQ holder for PCI steering feature that allows multiple PCI devices to use a single IRQ, if the BIOS is designed to support it.

To view the current IRQ and DMA settings for systems using Windows 9x, use the Device Manager (a tab on the System Properties sheet). View the properties for the “Computer” icon at the top of the device list and you can choose from IRQ, DMA, I/O port, and Memory address information (see Figure 2.15).

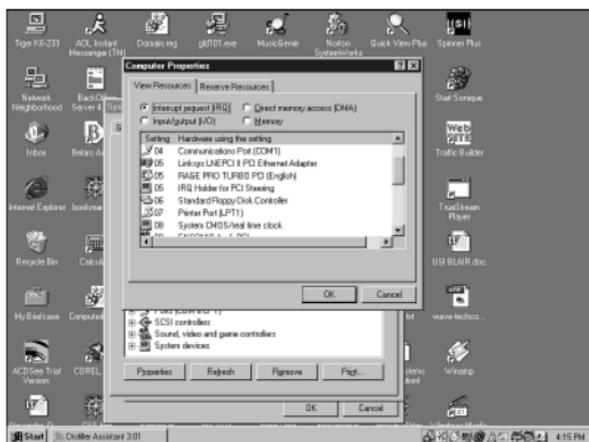


Figure 2.15 The Windows 9x Device Manager and Computer Properties sheet shows IRQs in use; available IRQs are not listed. The IRQ steering feature enables IRQ 5 to be shared between two different PCI-based cards without conflicts.

For other operating systems, I recommend an interface card with signal lights for IRQ and DMA usage. The Discovery Card, developed by John Rourke, pioneered this diagnostic category, and many vendors offer cards with this feature. Some vendors combine IRQ/DMA detection with POST code detection or active system testing.

To use an IRQ/DMA card, turn off the system, insert the card into an open slot, and turn on the system. As devices that use an IRQ or a DMA are activated, the corresponding signal light on the card is displayed. Most cards have a reset switch, which enables the card lights to be cleared, allowing you to test for possible conflicts. When combined with information from a system configuration template, this helps provide accurate IRQ and DMA usage information.

I/O Port Addresses

Your computer's I/O ports enable communications between devices and software in your system. They are equivalent to two-way radio channels. If you want to talk to your serial port, you need to know which I/O port (radio channel) it is listening on. Similarly, if you want to receive data from the serial port, you need to listen on the same channel on which it is transmitting.

One confusing issue is that I/O ports are designated by hexadecimal addresses similar to memory addresses. They are not memory; they are ports.

Motherboard and chipset devices are normally set to use I/O port addresses from 0h to FFh, and all other devices use from 100h to FFFFh. Table 2.22 shows motherboard and chipset-based I/O port usage.

Table 2.22 Motherboard and Chipset-Based Device Port Addresses

Address (Hex)	Size	Description
0000–000F	16 bytes	Chipset - 8237 DMA 1
0020–0021	2 bytes	Chipset - 8259 interrupt controller 1
002E–002F	2 bytes	Super I/O controller configuration registers
0040–0043	4 bytes	Chipset - Counter/Timer 1
0048–004B	4 bytes	Chipset - Counter/Timer 2
0060	1 byte	Keyboard/Mouse controller byte - reset IRQ
0061	1 byte	Chipset - NMI, speaker control
0064	1 byte	Keyboard/mouse controller, CMD/STAT byte
0070, bit 7	1 bit	Chipset - Enable NMI
0070, bits 6:0	7 bits	MC146818 - Real-time clock, address
0071	1 byte	MC146818 - Real-time clock, data
0078	1 byte	Reserved - Board configuration
0079	1 byte	Reserved - Board configuration
0080–008F	16 bytes	Chipset - DMA page registers
00A0–00A1	2 bytes	Chipset - 8259 interrupt controller 2
00B2	1 byte	APM control port
00B3	1 byte	APM status port
00C0–00DE	31 bytes	Chipset - 8237 DMA 2
00F0	1 byte	Math coprocessor reset numeric error

To find out exactly which port addresses are being used on your motherboard, consult the board documentation or look up the settings in the Windows Device Manager.

Bus-based devices (I/O devices found on the motherboard or on add-on cards) normally use the addresses from 100h on up. Table 2.23 lists the commonly used bus-based device addresses and some common adapter cards and their settings.

Table 2.23 Bus-Based Device Port Addresses

Address (Hex)	Size	Description
0130-0133	4 bytes	Adaptec SCSI adapter (alternate)
0134-0137	4 bytes	Adaptec SCSI adapter (alternate)
0168-016F	8 bytes	Fourth IDE interface
0170-0177	8 bytes	Secondary IDE interface
01E8-01EF	8 bytes	Third IDE interface
01F0-01F7	8 bytes	Primary IDE/AT (16-bit) hard disk controller
0200-0207	8 bytes	Gameport or joystick adapter
0210-0217	8 bytes	IBM XT expansion chassis
0220-0233	20 bytes	Creative Labs Sound Blaster 16 audio (default)
0230-0233	4 bytes	Adaptec SCSI adapter (alternate)
0234-0237	4 bytes	Adaptec SCSI adapter (alternate)
0238-023B	4 bytes	MS bus mouse (alternate)
023C-023F	4 bytes	MS bus mouse (default)
0240-024F	16 bytes	SMC Ethernet adapter (default)
0240-0253	20 bytes	Creative Labs Sound Blaster 16 audio (alternate)
0258-025F	8 bytes	Intel above board
0260-026F	16 bytes	SMC Ethernet adapter (alternate)
0260-0273	20 bytes	Creative Labs Sound Blaster 16 audio (alternate)
0270-0273	4 bytes	Plug-and-Play I/O read ports
0278-027F	8 bytes	Parallel Port 2 (LPT2)
0280-028F	16 bytes	SMC Ethernet adapter (alternate)
0280-0293	20 bytes	Creative Labs Sound Blaster 16 audio (alternate)
02A0-02AF	16 bytes	SMC Ethernet adapter (alternate)
02C0-02CF	16 bytes	SMC Ethernet adapter (alternate)
02E0-02EF	16 bytes	SMC Ethernet adapter (alternate)
02E8-02EF	8 bytes	Serial Port 4 (COM 4)
02EC-02EF	4 bytes	Video, 8514, or ATI standard port
02F8-02FF	8 bytes	Serial Port 2 (COM 2)
0300-0301	2 bytes	MPU-401 MIDI port (secondary)
0300-030F	16 bytes	SMC Ethernet adapter (alternate)
0320-0323	4 bytes	XT (8-bit) hard disk controller
0320-032F	16 bytes	SMC Ethernet adapter (alternate)
0330-0331	2 bytes	MPU-401 MIDI port (default)
0330-0333	4 bytes	Adaptec SCSI adapter (default)
0334-0337	4 bytes	Adaptec SCSI adapter (alternate)

Table 2.23 Bus-Based Device Port Addresses Continued

Address (Hex)	Size	Description
0340–034F	16 bytes	SMC Ethernet adapter (alternate)
0360–036F	16 bytes	SMC Ethernet adapter (alternate)
0366	1 byte	Fourth IDE command port
0367, bits 6:0	7 bits	Fourth IDE status port
0370–0375	6 bytes	Secondary floppy controller
0376	1 byte	Secondary IDE command port
0377, bit 7	1 bit	Secondary floppy controller disk change
0377, bits 6:0	7 bits	Secondary IDE status port
0378–037F	8 bytes	Parallel Port 1 (LPT1)
0380–038F	16 bytes	SMC Ethernet adapter (alternate)
0388–038B	4 bytes	Audio - FM synthesizer
03B0–03BB	12 bytes	Video, Mono/EGA/VGA standard ports
03BC–03BF	4 bytes	Parallel Port 1 (LPT1) in some systems
03BC–03BF	4 bytes	Parallel Port 3 (LPT3)
03C0–03CF	16 bytes	Video, EGA/VGA standard ports
03D0–03DF	16 bytes	Video, CGA/EGA/VGA standard ports
03E6	1 byte	Third IDE command port
03E7, bits 6:0	7 bits	Third IDE status port
03E8–03EF	8 bytes	Serial Port 3 (COM 3)
03F0–03F5	6 bytes	Primary floppy controller
03F6	1 byte	Primary IDE command port
03F7, bit 7	1 bit	Primary floppy controller disk change
03F7, bits 6:0	7 bits	Primary IDE status port
03F8–03FF	8 bytes	Serial Port 1 (COM 1)
04D0–04D1	2 bytes	Edge/level triggered PCI interrupt controller
0530–0537	8 bytes	Windows sound system (default)
0604–060B	8 bytes	Windows sound system (alternate)
0678–067F	8 bytes	LPT2 in ECP mode
0778–077F	8 bytes	LPT1 in ECP mode
0A20–0A23	4 bytes	IBM Token-Ring adapter (default)
0A24–0A27	4 bytes	IBM Token-Ring adapter (alternate)
0CF8–0CFB	4 bytes	PCI configuration address registers
0CF9	1 byte	Turbo and reset control register
0CFC–0CFF	4 bytes	PCI configuration data registers
FF00–FF07	8 bytes	IDE bus master registers
FF80–FF9F	32 bytes	Universal Serial Bus (USB)
FFA0–FFA7	8 bytes	Primary bus master IDE registers
FFA8–FFAF	8 bytes	Secondary bus master IDE registers

Determining Actual I/O Address Ranges in Use

To find out exactly what your devices are using, consult the documentation for the device or look up the device in the Windows 9x Device Manager (see Figure 2.16). Note that some device documentation might list only the starting I/O address and not the full range of addresses used.

Virtually all devices on your system buses use I/O port addresses. Most of these are fairly standardized, meaning you won't often have conflicts or problems with these settings.

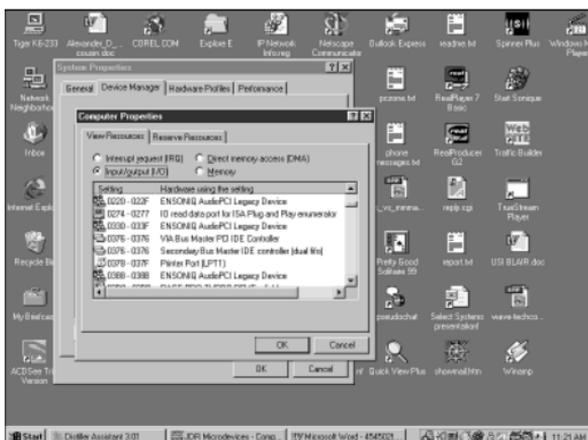


Figure 2.16 The Windows 9x Device Manager lists the starting and ending I/O port addresses for both motherboard-based and add-on card devices.

Troubleshooting Add-on Card Resource Conflicts

The resources in a system are limited. Unfortunately, the demands on those resources seem to be unlimited. As you add more and more adapter cards to your system, you will find that the potential for resource conflicts increases.

Symptoms of a Potential Resource Conflict

- A device transfers data inaccurately.
- Your system frequently locks up.
- Your sound card doesn't sound quite right.
- Your mouse doesn't work.
- Garbage appears on your video screen for no apparent reason.
- Your printer prints gibberish.

- You cannot format a floppy disk.
- The PC starts in Safe mode (Windows 9x/2000/Me).

Spotting Resource Conflicts with Windows 9x/2000/Me

Windows 9x/Me/2000 also show conflicts by highlighting a device in yellow or red in the Device Manager representation. By using the Windows Device Manager, you can usually spot the conflicts quickly (see Figure 2.17).

Keep in mind that many computer viruses can also cause symptoms similar to hardware resource conflicts. Scan your system for viruses before you start working on it.

Recording System Settings

Use a System Configuration Template to record system settings. This sheet is resource-oriented, not device-oriented, to make finding conflicts easier. You can make a printout of the System Summary from the Windows 9x/Me/2000 Device Manager to get a lot of this information. For other operating systems, use the methods listed earlier.

The first system resource map is provided as a model for your use; it lists fixed resources on a modern PC. Add the other resources used on your PC. Note that many high-performance PCI or AGP video cards do use an IRQ, although some motherboard chipsets have a provision for disabling the IRQ usage.

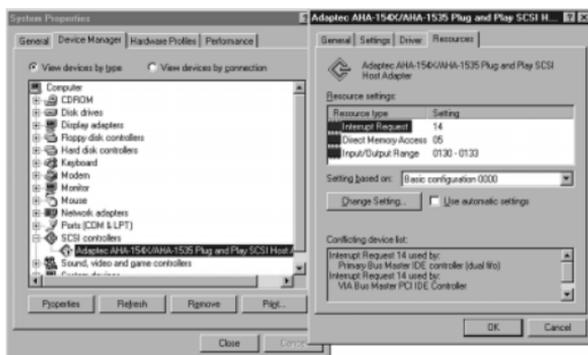


Figure 2.17 The yellow circle next to the Adaptec 154x SCSI card indicates a conflict; view the card resources (right window) to see the conflicting device.

System Resource Map

PC Make and Model: _____

Serial Number: _____

Date: _____

Interrupts (IRQs): _____ I/O Port Addresses: _____

0 - Timer Circuits _____ 040-04B _____

1 - Keyboard/Mouse Controller _____ 060 & 064 _____

2 - 2nd 8259 IRQ Controller _____ 0A0-0A1 _____

8 - Real-time Clock/CMOS RAM _____ 070-071 _____

9 - _____

10 - _____

11 - _____

12 - _____

13 - Math Coprocessor _____ 0F0 _____

14 - _____

15 - _____

3 - _____

4 - _____

5 - _____

6 - _____

7 - _____

Devices not using Interrupts: _____ I/O Port Addresses: _____

Mono/EGA/VGA Standard Ports _____ 3B0-3BB _____

EGA/VGA Standard Ports _____ 3C0-3CF _____

CGA/EGA/VGA Standard Ports _____ 3D0-3DF _____

DMA Channels:

0 - _____

1 - _____

2 - _____

3 - _____

4 - DMA Channel 0-3 Cascade _____

5 - _____

6 - _____

7 - _____

Here's an example of how to fill out the worksheet:

System Resource Map	
PC Make and Model:	Intel SE440BX-2 _____
Serial Number:	100000 _____
Date:	06/09/99 _____
Interrupts (IRQs):	I/O Port Addresses:
0 - Timer Circuits _____	040-04B _____
1 - Keyboard/Mouse Controller _____	060 & 064 _____
2 - 2nd 8259 IRQ Controller _____	0A0-0A1 _____
8 - Real-time Clock/CMOS RAM _____	070-071 _____
9 - SMC EtherEZ Ethernet card _____	340-35F _____
10 - _____	_____
11 - Adaptec 1542CF SCSI Adapter (scanner) _____	334-337 ¹ _____
12 - Motherboard Mouse Port _____	060 & 064 _____
13 - Math Coprocessor _____	0F0 _____
14 - Primary IDE (hard disk 1 and 2) _____	1F0-1F7, 3F6 _____
15 - Secondary IDE (CD-ROM/tape) _____	170-177, 376 _____
3 - Serial Port 2 (Modem) _____	3F8-3FF _____
4 - Serial Port 1 (COM1) _____	2F8-2FF _____
5 - Sound Blaster 16 Audio _____	220-233 _____
6 - Floppy Controller _____	3F0-3F5 _____
7 - Parallel Port 1 (Printer) _____	378-37F _____
Devices not using interrupts:	I/O Port Addresses:
Mono/EGA/VGA Standard Ports _____	3B0-3BB _____
EGA/VGA Standard Ports _____	3C0-3CF _____
CGA/EGA/VGA Standard Ports _____	3D0-3DF _____
ATI Mach 64 video card additional ports _____	102,1CE-1CF,2EC-2EF _____
Sound Blaster 16 MIDI port _____	330-331 _____
Sound Blaster 16 Game port (joystick) _____	200-207 _____
Sound Blaster 16 FM synthesizer (music) 388-38B _____	_____
_____	_____
DMA Channels:	
0 - _____	
1 - Sound Blaster 16 (8-bit DMA) _____	
2 - Floppy Controller _____	
3 - Parallel Port 1 (in ECP mode) _____	
4 - DMA Channel 0-3 Cascade _____	
5 - Sound Blaster 16 (16-bit DMA) _____	
6 - Adaptec 1542CF SCSI adapter ¹ _____	
7 - _____	

1. Represents a resource setting that had to be changed to resolve a conflict.

After you've completed your system resource map by recording the current settings for hardware, you're ready to solve conflicts.

Note

Resource use can change whenever PnP or non-PnP hardware is installed or removed, so you should update this chart whenever you add or remove internal hardware.

Resolving Conflicts by Card and Operating System Type

Table 2.24 Guide to Resolving Conflicts

Operating System	Card Type	Notes
Windows 9x/ 2000/Me	PnP	Use Device Manager to change card settings if possible; remove and reinstall card to re-detect card and use new settings if card can't be set manually; if new card can't be detected when installed, remove other PnP cards and install new card first.
	Non-PnP	Use Device Manager to see conflicting devices; manually configure cards to non-conflicting settings by changing jumpers, DIP switches, or rerunning configuration programs.
Other operating systems	Any	<p><i>When did the conflict first become apparent?</i> If the conflict occurred after you installed a new adapter card, that new card probably is causing the conflict. If the conflict occurred after you started using new software, chances are good that the software uses a device that is taxing your system's resources in a new way.</p> <p><i>Are two similar devices in your system not working?</i> For example, if your modem, integrated serial ports, or mouse devices that use a COM port do not work, chances are good that these devices are conflicting with each other.</p> <p><i>Have other people had the same problem? And if so, how did they resolve it?</i> Public forums such as those on CompuServe, Internet newsgroups, and America Online are great places to find other users who might be able to help you solve the conflict. Also check vendor forums for help.</p> <p>After you research these questions, make one (one!) change to your system configuration, reboot the computer and see whether the problem is now resolved. Repeat with a different setting until the problem is solved.</p> <p>Test all components to make sure that "fixing" one component didn't cause a conflict with</p>

another.

Expansion Slots

If you want to add network, SCSI, modem, or sound capabilities to an existing system or upgrade your video card, you need to understand expansion slots. Expansion slots act as an extension of the system bus and permit you to connect cards with different features to your system.

ISA

ISA (Industry Standard Architecture) expansion slots are the oldest expansion slot design found in current PCs. 8-bit versions go all the way back to the original IBM PC of 1981. While 8-bit-only ISA slots have faded away, 16-bit ISA slots (introduced with the IBM PC/AT in 1984) are fully pin-compatible with 8-bit ISA cards. See Figures 2.18 and 2.19.

Figure 2.19 shows the orientation and relation of 8-bit and 16-bit ISA bus slots.

EISA—A 32-bit Version of ISA

The EISA (Enhanced ISA) bus was developed from the ISA architecture to provide 32-bit data transfers. The EISA expansion slot (introduced in 1988) is a deeper version of ISA, providing a second, offset row of connectors that allows EISA slots to support ISA cards.

Figure 2.20 shows the locations of the pins.

Because of its high cost and limited performance boost over ISA, EISA bus systems have primarily been used for network file servers using 386, 486, and occasionally Pentium-class CPUs.

EISA was introduced as a response to IBM's MicroChannel architecture, which was used primarily on more-advanced models of IBM's PS/2 line from 1987 until the early 1990s. It is now obsolete.

VL-Bus—A Faster 32-Bit Version of ISA

Introduced in 1992, the VL-Bus (VESA Local-Bus) was an improved 32-bit version of ISA designed originally to provide faster video

Signal	Pin	Pin	Signal
Ground	B1	A1	-I/O CH CHK
RESET DRV	B2	A2	Data Bit 7
+5 Vdc	B3	A3	Data Bit 6
IRQ 9	B4	A4	Data Bit 5
-5 Vdc	B5	A5	Data Bit 4
DRQ 2	B6	A6	Data Bit 3
-12 Vdc	B7	A7	Data Bit 2
-0 WAIT	B8	A8	Data Bit 1
+12 Vdc	B9	A9	Data Bit 0
Ground	B10	A10	-I/O CH RDY
-SMEMW	B11	A11	AEN
-SMEMR	B12	A12	Address 19
-IOW	B13	A13	Address 18
-IOR	B14	A14	Address 17
-DACK 3	B15	A15	Address 16
DRQ 3	B16	A16	Address 15
-DACK 1	B17	A17	Address 14
DRQ 1	B18	A18	Address 13
-Refresh	B19	A19	Address 12
CLK(8.33MHz)	B20	A20	Address 11
IRQ 7	B21	A21	Address 10
IRQ 6	B22	A22	Address 9
IRQ 5	B23	A23	Address 8
IRQ 4	B24	A24	Address 7
IRQ 3	B25	A25	Address 6
-DACK 2	B26	A26	Address 5
T/C	B27	A27	Address 4
BALE	B28	A28	Address 3
+5 Vdc	B29	A29	Address 2
OSC(14.3MHz)	B30	A30	Address 1
Ground	B31	A31	Address 0
-MEM CS16	D1	C1	-SBHE
-I/O CS16	D2	C2	Latch Address 23
IRQ 10	D3	C3	Latch Address 22
IRQ 11	D4	C4	Latch Address 21
IRQ 12	D5	C5	Latch Address 20
IRQ 15	D6	C6	Latch Address 19
IRQ 14	D7	C7	Latch Address 18
-DACK 0	D8	C8	Latch Address 17
DRQ 0	D9	C9	-MEMR
-DACK 5	D10	C10	-MEMW
DRQ5	D11	C11	Data Bit 8
-DACK 6	D12	C12	Data Bit 9
DRQ 6	D13	C13	Data Bit 10
-DACK 7	D14	C14	Data Bit 11
DRQ 7	D15	C15	Data Bit 12
+5 Vdc	D16	C16	Data Bit 13
-Master	D17	C17	Data Bit 14
Ground	D18	C18	Data Bit 15

card performance on 486-based systems. This slot design, like EISA,

8/16-bit ISA Bus Pinouts.

8-bit PC/XT Connector:

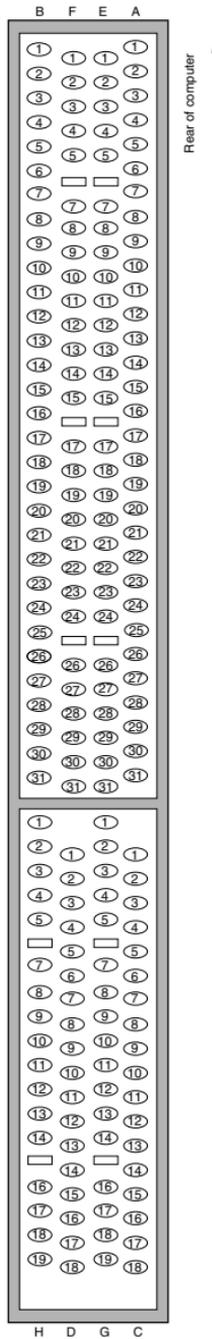
Signal	Pin Numbers	Signal
GROUND	B1	A1 -I/O CHK
RESET DRV	B2	A2 DATA 7
+5 Vdc	B3	A3 DATA 6
IRQ 2	B4	A4 DATA 5
-5 Vdc	B5	A5 DATA 4
DRQ 2	B6	A6 DATA 3
-12 Vdc	B7	A7 DATA 2
-CARD SLCT	B8	A8 DATA 1
+12 Vdc	B9	A9 DATA 0
GROUND	B10	A10 -I/O RDY
-SMEMW	B11	A11 AEN
-SMEMR	B12	A12 ADDR 19
-IOW	B13	A13 ADDR 18
-IOR	B14	A14 ADDR 17
-DACK 3	B15	A15 ADDR 16
DRQ 3	B16	A16 ADDR 15
-DACK 1	B17	A17 ADDR 14
DRQ 1	B18	A18 ADDR 13
-REFRESH	B19	A19 ADDR 12
CLK (4.77MHz)	B20	A20 ADDR 11
IRQ 7	B21	A21 ADDR 10
IRQ 6	B22	A22 ADDR 9
IRQ 5	B23	A23 ADDR 8
IRQ 4	B24	A24 ADDR 7
IRQ 3	B25	A25 ADDR 6
-DACK 2	B26	A26 ADDR 5
T/C	B27	A27 ADDR 4
BALE	B28	A28 ADDR 3
+5 Vdc	B29	A29 ADDR 2
OSC (14.3MHz)	B30	A30 ADDR 1
GROUND	B31	A31 ADDR 0

16-bit AT Connector:

Signal	Pin Numbers	Signal
GROUND	B1	A1 -I/O CHK
RESET DRV	B2	A2 DATA 7
+5 Vdc	B3	A3 DATA 6
IRQ 9	B4	A4 DATA 5
-5 Vdc	B5	A5 DATA 4
DRQ 2	B6	A6 DATA 3
-12 Vdc	B7	A7 DATA 2
-OWS	B8	A8 DATA 1
+12 Vdc	B9	A9 DATA 0
GROUND	B10	A10 -I/O RDY
-SMEMW	B11	A11 AEN
-SMEMR	B12	A12 ADDR 19
-IOW	B13	A13 ADDR 18
-IOR	B14	A14 ADDR 17
-DACK 3	B15	A15 ADDR 16
DRQ 3	B16	A16 ADDR 15
-DACK 1	B17	A17 ADDR 14
DRQ 1	B18	A18 ADDR 13
-REFRESH	B19	A19 ADDR 12
CLK (8.33MHz)	B20	A20 ADDR 11
IRQ 7	B21	A21 ADDR 10
IRQ 6	B22	A22 ADDR 9
IRQ 5	B23	A23 ADDR 8
IRQ 4	B24	A24 ADDR 7
IRQ 3	B25	A25 ADDR 6
-DACK 2	B26	A26 ADDR 5
T/C	B27	A27 ADDR 4
BALE	B28	A28 ADDR 3
+5 Vdc	B29	A29 ADDR 2
OSC (14.3MHz)	B30	A30 ADDR 1
GROUND	B31	A31 ADDR 0

-MEM CS16	D1	C1 -SBHE
-I/O CS16	D2	C2 LADDR 23
IRQ 10	D3	C3 LADDR 22
IRQ 11	D4	C4 LADDR 21
IRQ 12	D5	C5 LADDR 20
IRQ 15	D6	C6 LADDR 19
IRQ 14	D7	C7 LADDR 18
-DACK 0	D8	C8 LADDR 17
DRQ 0	D9	C9 -MEMR
-DACK 5	D10	C10 -MEMW
DRQ 5	D11	C11 DATA 8
-DACK 6	D12	C12 DATA 9
DRQ 6	D13	C13 DATA 10
-DACK 7	D14	C14 DATA 11
DRQ 7	D15	C15 DATA 12
+5 Vdc	D16	C16 DATA 13
-MASTER	D17	C17 DATA 14
GROUND	D18	C18 DATA 15

is now obsolete. While most VL-Bus slots were added to an ISA



slot, the VL-Bus connector could also be added to an EISA slot. Thus, any VL-Bus slot is also an ISA or an ISA/EISA slot (see Figure 2.21).

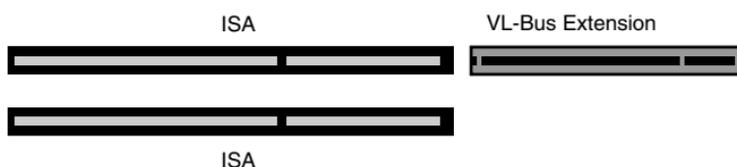


Figure 2.18 Pinouts for the 16-bit ISA bus.

Figure 2.19 The 8-bit and 16-bit ISA bus connectors.

Figure 2.20 The card connector for the EISA bus. The inner connectors were used for the EISA cards, whereas the outer connectors supported 8-bit and 16-bit ISA cards.

Figure 2.21 An example of a VL-Bus slot in an ISA system.

PCI

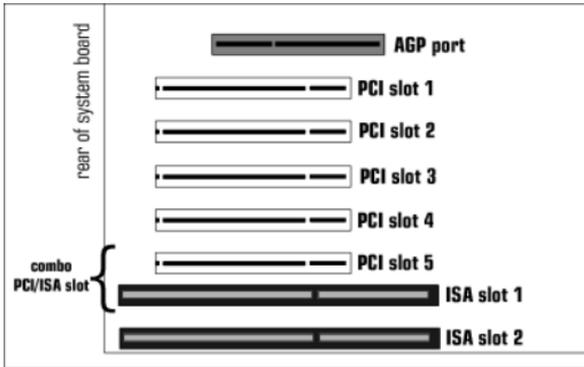
Intel developed PCI (Peripheral Component Interconnect) in 1992 to eventually replace ISA and its variations. Most PCI slots provide 32-bit transfers, with a 64-bit version of PCI being used in many late-model file servers.

While a number of new “legacy-free” systems offer only PCI slots, most systems you will encounter will also have one or more ISA slots, as in Figure 2.21.

AGP

The latest expansion slot design is AGP (Accelerated Graphics Port), introduced in 1996 to provide faster video performance in a dedicated slot. AGP doesn't replace PCI for general purposes, but AGP video cards offer much faster performance than similar PCI cards, and can also “borrow” from main memory for 3D texturing. Most typical Pentium II/III, Celeron, Athlon, Duron, or Super Socket 7 systems include a single AGP slot as well as a mixture of PCI and ISA slots (see Figure 2.22).

Note



While AGP video is standard on all desktop systems today, it is often implemented on very low-cost systems by means of onboard video rather than an AGP slot.

Table 2.25 provides a visual quick reference for expansion slots found in modern PCs.

Figure 2.22 The AGP slot is located at the first (inside) slot position on motherboards with an AGP slot. Note the lack of space between the last PCI slot and the first ISA slot. This is called a *combo* or *shared* slot; only one of the slots can actually be used.

Table 2.25 Expansion Slot Quick-Reference Table			
Slot Type	Bus Speed	Bus Width	Best Use
ISA	8.33MHz	8-bit or 16-bit	Modems, serial, parallel ports; will be phased out in early twenty-first century
EISA	8.33MHz	32-bit with EISA cards; compatible with ISA cards	Obsolete for most uses; works well with server-optimized NIC cards
MCA	10MHz	16-bit or 32-bit	Introduced with IBM MicroChannel PS/2s in 1987; obsolete
VL-Bus	25–33MHz typical; can be run up to 40MHz on some systems	32-bit; slot also can be used as ISA	Obsolete; was popular for video cards and IDE hard disk interfaces
PCI	25–33MHz (depends on speed)	Most are 32-bit; some 64-bit implementations	Video, SCSI, sound, modems; replaced ISA as general-purpose bus

Chapter 3

BIOS Configurations and Upgrades

What the BIOS Is and What It Does

The BIOS (basic input/output system) chip on the computer's motherboard is designed to provide the essential interfacing between hardware (such as drives, the clock, the CPU, the chipset, and video) and software (the operating system). While video, some SCSI, and a few IDE add-on cards might also have BIOS chips that help manage those devices, whenever I refer to the computer's *BIOS chip*, I mean the one on the motherboard. The BIOS chip is often referred to as the *ROM BIOS*, because in its traditional form it was a read-only memory chip with contents that could not be changed. Later versions could be reprogrammed with an EEPROM programmer, and beginning in the early 1990s, BIOSes using flash memory (*Flash BIOS*) began to appear. Flash BIOSes can be reprogrammed through software, and virtually all BIOSes on Pentium-class machines and beyond are flash upgradable.

Regardless of its form, the BIOS chip on the motherboard is also known as the *system BIOS*.

When a BIOS Update Is Necessary

The following list shows the primary benefits of a ROM BIOS upgrade:

- Adds LS-120 (120MB) floppy drive support (also known as a SuperDrive)
- Adds support for hard drives greater than 8GB
- Adds support for Ultra-DMA/33 or faster IDE hard drives
- Adds support for bootable ATAPI CD-ROM drives
- Adds or improves Plug-and-Play support and compatibility
- Corrects year-2000 and leap-year bugs
- Corrects known bugs or compatibility problems with certain hardware and software
- Adds support for newer types of processors

In general, if your computer is incapable of using all the features of new software or hardware, you might need a BIOS upgrade.

Specific Tests to Determine Whether Your BIOS Needs an Update

To determine whether your BIOS needs to be updated because of hard drive capacity limitations, see Chapter 4, “SCSI and IDE Hard Drives and Optical Drives.”

To determine whether your BIOS needs to be updated because of operating system or CPU-upgrade issues, consult the technical-support Web sites for the operating system or CPU upgrade.

If your computer was built before 1999 and you have not performed a BIOS upgrade or loaded year-2000 patches for your operating system and applications, you might have Y2K-related problems with accurate date handling. Because the RTC (Real-Time-Clock) on most computers doesn't track centuries, the system BIOS must accurately add this information before handing the date to the operating system and applications, and the BIOS/RTC must also accurately handle leap years such as 2000 and beyond. A BIOS upgrade is the best way to handle RTC/BIOS issues, but software patches in the AUTOEXEC.BAT or CONFIG.SYS can also be used.

Consult your operating system and application vendors for appropriate solutions, including software updates or replacement versions.

Fixing BIOS Limitations—BIOS Fixes and Alternatives

Use Table 3.1 to determine which options you can follow if a BIOS update isn't possible, depending on the BIOS problem noted.

Table 3.1 Alternatives to BIOS Upgrades

Problem	Alternative Fix	Benefits of Alternative Fix	Limitations of Alternative Fix
Y2K date rollover	Install Y2K-compliant BIOS card.	Provides hardware solution to non-compliant BIOS; can be combined with fix for hard disk capacity limitations.	Uses an ISA slot; doesn't handle problems with direct access to RTC that might be performed by some operating systems and applications.
	Install Y2K-compliant BIOS and RTC card.	Provides hardware solution for both BIOS and RTC Y2K.	Uses an ISA slot; some versions require that drivers be installed for the operating system in use.
	Install Y2K-compliant TSR or device driver.	Low-cost or free solution that avoids opening system.	Can be bypassed by booting off floppy; might not handle all Y2K clock rollover problems; can be removed from boot process; not available for all operating systems.

Table 3.1 Alternatives to BIOS Upgrades Continued

Problem	Alternative Fix	Benefits of Alternative Fix	Limitations of Alternative Fix
IDE hard disk capacity limitations	See Chapter 4 for details of these fixes.		
Complete solution	Replace motherboard.	Provides both brand-new BIOS and new motherboard features at a price often just slightly higher than a third-party BIOS upgrade.	System must use standard MB form factor; mix of ISA and PCI/AGP slots might mean some existing cards won't fit because latest motherboards have more PCI than ISA slots; time-consuming hardware install; requires time-consuming redetection and configuration of hardware drivers in operating system.

How BIOS Updates Are Performed

Two different ways of updating a motherboard BIOS are available.

With older systems, a physical *chip swap* (also called a *BIOS chip upgrade*) is necessary. The original BIOS chip is removed, and a new BIOS chip is inserted in its place. The new BIOS must be customized to match the old system's motherboard and chipset, use its existing CPU, and provide the enhanced features specified by the upgrade BIOS manufacturer. The typical cost range is around \$60–90 for a single BIOS chip.

With newer systems that have a flash-upgradable BIOS, the update software is downloaded and installed onto a disk, which is used to boot the computer. Then, the new BIOS code is copied to the BIOS chip in a process that takes about 3–5 minutes. If the BIOS update comes from a source *other* than the original system or motherboard maker, it will also cost as much as \$90 for the update.

In either case, the system might need to be reconfigured, especially if the new BIOS was physically installed, or if either a chip-based or flash-based BIOS is a different brand of BIOS than the original.

Where BIOS Updates Come From

The best (and cheapest!) place to get a BIOS update is from your motherboard or system vendor. Most major system manufacturers offer free BIOS updates for their systems with flash BIOS chips on their Web sites. For *clone* systems with motherboards from various producers, see the section “Determining Which BIOS You Have” later in this chapter.

A second source for BIOS updates is from one of the following companies.

For systems that originally used the Phoenix BIOS, contact Micro Firmware (www.firmware.com or 800-767-5465). Micro Firmware typically supplies updated Phoenix flash BIOS code on disk for systems they support. See the Web site for the current list of supported systems and motherboards.

For systems that originally used the Award, AMI, MR BIOS, or Phoenix BIOS (including systems not supported by Micro Firmware), contact Unicore Software (www.unicore.com or 800-800-BIOS). Unicore might supply the update on disk or as a replacement MR BIOS chip. Contact these vendors for details and prices, which vary by system.

Precautions to Take Before Updating a BIOS

Use the following checklist to be safe, not sorry, when updating a BIOS.

First, back up your data. An “almost working” BIOS that doesn’t quite work with your hard drive can blow away your data.

Back up your current BIOS code if you can. Some BIOS update loader programs offer this option, but others don’t. As an alternative, some BIOS chips keep a mini-BIOS onboard that can be reactivated in the event that a botched update destroys the main BIOS. Some motherboards have a jumper that can be used to switch to the backup; check your system documentation. For others, check the Micro Firmware Web site for its Flash BIOS Recovery Disks page to find out whether your motherboard is listed. If the BIOS update isn’t completed properly, you could have a dead system that will need a trip to the manufacturer for repair. See the next section, “How to Recover from a Failed BIOS Update Procedure,” for a typical recovery procedure.

Record your hard drive configuration information, including the following:

- Cylinders
- Heads
- Sectors per Track
- Translation (Normal, LBA [greater than 504MB], Large, and so on)

If you are switching to a different brand of BIOS, you might need to re-enter this information.

Record other non-standard BIOS settings, such as hard disk transfer rate settings, built-in serial and parallel port settings, and so on. A worksheet you can use as a guide is found later in this chapter.

Read carefully and completely the information provided with the flash BIOS download or chip-type BIOS update kit. Check online or call the BIOS manufacturer if you have any questions before you ruin your BIOS.

Check to see whether your system has a *write-protect* setting jumper on the motherboard that must be adjusted to allow a BIOS update to take place. Some motherboards disable BIOS updates by default to protect your system's BIOS from unauthorized changes. Set your motherboard to allow the change before you install the flash BIOS update, and reset the protection after the update is complete.

How to Recover from a Failed BIOS Update Procedure

Most motherboards with soldered-in flash ROMs have a special BIOS Recovery procedure that can be performed. This hinges on a special unerasable part of the flash ROM that is reserved for this purpose.

In the unlikely event that a flash upgrade is interrupted catastrophically, the BIOS might be left in an unusable state. Recovering from this condition requires the following steps. A minimum of a power supply, a speaker, and a floppy drive configured as drive A: should be attached to the motherboard for this procedure to work:

1. Change the Flash Recovery jumper to the recovery mode position. Virtually all Intel motherboards and many third-party motherboards have a jumper or switch for BIOS recovery, which is normally labeled Recover/Normal.
2. Install the bootable BIOS upgrade disk you previously created to perform the flash upgrade into drive A: and reboot the system.

Because of the small amount of code available in the non-erasable flash boot block area, no video prompts are available to direct the procedure. In other words, you will see nothing onscreen. In fact, it is not even necessary for a video card to be connected for this procedure to work. The procedure can be monitored by listening to the speaker and looking at the

floppy drive LED. When the system beeps and the floppy drive LED is lit, the system is copying the BIOS recovery code into the flash device.

3. As soon as the drive LED goes off, the recovery should be complete. Power the system off.
4. Change the flash recovery jumper back to the default position for normal operation.

When you power the system back on, the new BIOS should be installed and functional. However, you might want to leave the BIOS upgrade floppy in drive A: and check to see that the proper BIOS version was installed.

Note

Note that this BIOS recovery procedure is often the fastest way to update a large number of machines, especially if you are performing other upgrades at the same time. This is how it is normally done in a system assembly or production environment.

Plug-and-Play BIOS

The role of the traditional BIOS was to manage the essential devices in the system: the hard drive, floppy drive, video, parallel and serial ports, and keyboard and system timer. Other devices were left to fight for the remaining IRQs and other hardware resources listed in Chapter 2, “System Components and Configuration.” When Windows 95 was introduced, the role of the BIOS changed dramatically. To support Windows 95, the Plug-and-Play BIOS was introduced, changing how cards were installed and managed. Table 3.2 compares a Plug-and-Play (PnP) BIOS to a conventional BIOS.

Table 3.2 Plug-and-Play BIOS Versus Conventional BIOS

Task	Conventional BIOS	Plug-and Play BIOS
Hardware configuration	Motherboard-based devices and video only	All PnP devices as well as motherboard devices
Configuration type	Static (fixed settings)	Dynamic (settings can be altered as various devices are installed)
Configuration	Manual configuration	Manual, BIOS-assisted, or operating method system assisted
Operating system relationship to BIOS	Accepts all BIOS settings without alteration	Receives PnP device information from BIOS and can alter settings as required

Note

A complete list of PnP device IDs is found in the Technical Reference section of the CD included with *Upgrading and Repairing PCs, 12th Edition*.

PnP BIOS Configuration Options

While PnP BIOSes vary widely in their features, the following settings are typical. Use the list in Table 3.3 along with the tables that follow to help you make configuration changes when necessary.

Resource Configuration

The Resource Configuration menu is used for configuring the memory and interrupt usage of non-Plug-and-Play (legacy) ISA bus-based devices. Table 3.3 shows the functions and options found in a typical modern BIOS.

Table 3.3 Typical Resource Configuration Menu¹

Feature	Options	Description
Memory Reservation	C800 CBFF Available (default) Reserved CC00 CFFF Available (default) Reserved D000 D3FF Available (default) Reserved D400 D7FF Available (default) Reserved D800 DBFF Available (default) Reserved DC00 DFFF Available (default) Reserved	Reserves specific upper memory blocks for use by legacy ISA devices.
IRQ Reservation	IRQ 3 Available (default) Reserved IRQ 4 Available (default) Reserved IRQ 5 Available (default) Reserved IRQ 7 Available (default) Reserved IRQ 10 Available (default) Reserved IRQ 11 Available (default) Reserved	Reserves specific IRQs for use by legacy ISA devices. An asterisk (*) displayed next to an IRQ indicates an IRQ conflict.

1. Based on the Phoenix BIOS used by the Intel SE440BX2 motherboard. Used by permission of Intel Corporation.

Note that these settings are only for legacy (non-Plug-and-Play) ISA devices. For all Plug-and-Play ISA devices, as well as PCI devices (which are Plug-and-Play by default), these resources are instead configured by the operating system or by software that comes with the cards.

Setting these resources here does not actually control the legacy ISA device; that usually must be done by moving jumpers on the card. By setting the resource as reserved here, you are telling the Plug-and-Play operating system that the reserved resources are off-limits, so it won't accidentally set a Plug-and-Play device to use the same resource as a legacy ISA device. Reserving resources in this manner is sometimes required because the Plug-and-Play software can't detect all legacy ISA devices and therefore won't know which settings the device might be using.

In a system with no legacy devices, reserving any resources via this menu is not necessary.

Some boards have additional configuration options for the Plug-and-Play (PnP) BIOS features as well as the PCI bus. These features are largely chipset dependent, but some common examples are shown in Table 3.4.

Table 3.4 Typical PnP and PCI Options¹

DMA n Assigned to	<p>When resources are controlled manually, assign each system DMA channel as one of the following types, depending on the type of device using the interrupt:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Legacy ISA devices compliant with the original PC AT bus specification, requiring a specific DMA channel • PCI/ISA PnP devices compliant with the Plug-and-Play standard, whether designed for PCI or ISA bus architecture
PCI IRQ Activated by	<p>Leave the IRQ trigger set at Level unless the PCI device assigned to the interrupt specifies edge-triggered interrupts.</p>
PCI IDE IRQ Map to	<p>This field enables you to select PCI IDE IRQ mapping or PC AT (ISA) interrupts. If your system does not have one or two PCI IDE connectors on the system board, select values according to the type of IDE interface(s) installed in your system (PCI or ISA). Standard ISA interrupts for IDE channels are IRQ 14 for primary and IRQ 15 for secondary.</p>
Primary/Secondary IDE INT#	<p>Each PCI peripheral connection is capable of activating up to four interrupts: INT# A, INT# B, INT# C, and INT# D. By default, a PCI connection is assigned INT# A. Assigning INT# B has no meaning unless the peripheral device requires two interrupt services rather than one. Because the PCI IDE interface in the chipset has two channels, it requires two interrupt services. The primary and secondary IDE INT# fields default to values appropriate for two PCI IDE channels, with the primary PCI IDE channel having a lower interrupt than the secondary.</p> <p>Note that all single-function PCI cards normally use INT# A, and each of these must be assigned to a different and unique ISA interrupt request (IRQ).</p>
Used Mem base addr	<p>Select a base address for the memory area used by any peripheral that requires high memory.</p>
Used Mem Length	<p>Select a length for the memory area specified in the previous field. This field does not appear if no base address is specified.</p>
Assign IRQ for USB	<p>Select Enabled if your system has a USB controller and you have one or more USB devices connected. If you are not using your system's USB controller, select Disabled to free the IRQ resource.</p>

1. Based on the Phoenix BIOS used by the Intel SE440BX2 motherboard. Used by permission of Intel Corporation.

When to Use the PnP BIOS Configuration Options

In an ideal situation involving PnP-aware operating systems—such as Windows 9x or 2000, a computer with a PnP BIOS, and a PnP device—the BIOS detects the PnP device and Windows configures it without user intervention. Table 3.5 lists the circumstances under which you might need to use PnP BIOS configuration options.

Table 3.5 Solving Configuration Problems with the PnP BIOS Configuration Options

Problem	Solution	Notes
Legacy (non-PnP) card needs particular IRQ or DMA setting already in use by PnP device.	Set DMA and IRQ used by legacy card to “ISA” option in BIOS.	This prevents PnP devices from using the resource; verify legacy card setting matches BIOS selections.
Windows 9x/Me/2000 is not detecting and configuring PnP devices not needed at boot time (such as modems, printers, and so on).	Set “Plug and Play Aware Operating System” option to “Yes” in BIOS.	
PCI video card is assigned an IRQ that you need for another device.	Set “Assign IRQ to VGA” option to “No” in BIOS.	This frees up the IRQ without ill effects in most cases; might not work if the video card is used for MPEG movie playback.
New PnP device can't be detected by system.	Set “PCI Slot x IRQ Priority” to desired (unused) IRQ; install card into designated PCI slot.	If setting the IRQ for the PCI slot doesn't work, remove all non-essential PnP cards, install new PnP card first, and then reinstall others.

Other BIOS Troubleshooting Tips

Use Table 3.6 to help solve some other typical system problems through BIOS configuration settings.

Table 3.6 Troubleshooting Common BIOS-Related System Problems

Problem	Solution	Notes
Can't access system because passwords for startup or setup access aren't known.	Passwords are stored in CMOS non-volatile RAM (NVRAM) and are configured through BIOS.	Remove battery on motherboard and wait for all CMOS settings to be lost or use MB jumper called “clear CMOS”; before clearing CMOS, view bootup configuration information and note hard drive and other configuration information, because all setup information must be re-entered after CMOS is cleared.

Table 3.6 Troubleshooting Common BIOS-Related System**Problems Continued**

Problem	Solution	Notes
System wastes time detecting hard drives at every bootup.	Disable automatic drive detection in BIOS; “lock in” settings for drives by using “detect drives” option in BIOS.	
System drops network or modem connection when system is idle.	Power management not set correctly for IRQs in use by modem or network card.	Determine which IRQs are used by devices and adjust power management for those devices; disable power management in BIOS.
Parallel or serial port conflicts.	Change configuration in BIOS.	See Chapters 6 and 7 for details.

For more about troubleshooting and adjusting BIOS configuration settings, see Chapter 5 of *Upgrading and Repairing PCs, 12th Edition*, published by Que.

Soft BIOS CPU Speed and Multiplier Settings

Conventional motherboards might require the user to configure CPU speed, FSB (motherboard or system bus) speed, and clock multipliers through a series of jumpers or switches or through BIOS configuration screens. One danger to BIOS configuration is that the user might create a configuration that won't allow the system to boot, and might require the CMOS configuration to be deleted to enable the user to try another option.

As an alternative, ABIT motherboards have pioneered BIOS-controlled configuration of CPU speeds, clock multipliers, FSB (motherboard/system bus) speeds, and other options using a feature called SoftMenu III that also enables hardware overrides.

SoftMenu III enables users to do the following:

- Adjust FSB speeds up to 200MHz
- Adjust core voltage
- Adjust AGP and PCI clock ratios

If the user creates an “impossible” combination of settings that won't permit the system to boot, a set of DIP switches on motherboards using SoftMenu III can override the BIOS configuration, enabling the system to boot.

Determining Which BIOS You Have

It's important to know which BIOS brand and version a computer has for two reasons.

First, in the event of a boot failure, BIOS error codes, which vary by brand and model, can be used to help you find the cause of the problem and lead you to a solution.

Second, knowing which BIOS brand and version you have can enable you to get help from the BIOS or system vendor for certain chipset configuration issues.

To determine which BIOS you have, use the following methods:

- Watch your system startup screen for information about the BIOS brand and version, such as "Award BIOS v4.51PG."
- Use a hardware test-and-reporting utility, such as Microsoft's venerable MSD.EXE, AMIDiag, CheckIt, or others.

Note that the best source for machine-specific information about error codes and other BIOS issues is your system manufacturer. Major vendors, such as IBM, Dell, Compaq, Gateway, Hewlett-Packard, and others, maintain excellent Web sites that list specific information for your system. However, if you are working with a white-box clone system made from generic components, BIOS-level information might be the best information you can get.

Determining the Motherboard Manufacturer for BIOS Upgrades

While knowing the BIOS brand and version is sufficient for troubleshooting a system that won't start, solving problems with issues such as year-2000 compliance, large hard disk support, and power management requires knowing exactly which motherboard you have and who produced it. Because motherboard manufacturers tailor BIOS code to the needs of each motherboard model, the motherboard or system vendor—not the BIOS vendor—is the source to turn to for BIOS upgrades and other BIOS configuration issues.

Identifying Motherboards with AMI BIOS

Motherboards using AMI BIOS versions built from 1991 to the present (AMI's High-Flex BIOS or WinBIOS) display a long string of numbers at the bottom of the first screen that is displayed when the system is powered on or restarted:

51-0411-001771-00111111-071595-82439HX-F

Interpret a number such as this one with the following numerical key (see Table 3.7):

AB - CCCC - DDDDDD - EFGHIJKL - mmdyy - MMMMMMM - N

Table 3.7 AB-CCCC-DDDDDD-EFGHIJKL-mmdyy-MMMMMM-N

Position	Description
A	Processor Type: 0 = 8086 or 8088 2 = 286 3 = 386 4 = 486 5 = Pentium 6 = Pentium Pro/II
B	Size of BIOS: 0 = 64KB BIOS 1 = 128KB BIOS
CCCC	Major and minor BIOS version number
DDDDDD	Manufacturer license code reference number: 0036xx = AMI 386 motherboard, xx = Series # 0046xx = AMI 486 motherboard, xx = Series # 0056xx = AMI Pentium motherboard, xx = Series # 0066xx = AMI Pentium Pro motherboard, xx = Series # (for other numbers see the following note)
E	1 = Halt on POST Error
F	1 = Initialize CMOS every boot
G	1 = Block pins 22 and 23 of the keyboard controller
H	1 = Mouse support in BIOS/keyboard controller
I	1 = Wait for F1 key on POST errors
J	1 = Display floppy error during POST
K	1 = Display video error during POST
L	1 = Display keyboard error during POST
mmdyy	BIOS Date, mm/dd/yy
MMMMMM	Chipset identifier or BIOS name
N	Keyboard controller version number

Note

Use the following resources to determine the manufacturer of non-AMI motherboards using the AMI BIOS:

AMI has a listing of U.S. and non-U.S. motherboard manufacturers at the following address:

<http://www.ami.com/amibios/support/identify.html>

AMI also offers a downloadable utility program called AMIMBID for use with Windows 9x/2000/NT and MS-DOS. Follow the AMI Motherboard Identification Utility link from the AMI Technical Support page, available as a link from the following address:

<http://www.ami.com>

A more detailed listing, including complete identification of particular motherboard models, is available at Wim's BIOS page (www.ping.be/bios). This site also has links to motherboard manufacturers for BIOS upgrades.

Identifying Motherboards with Award BIOS

Motherboards with the Award Software BIOS also use a numerical code, although the structure is different from that for the AMI Hi-Flex BIOS.

The following is a typical Award BIOS ID:

2A59**I**A**B**DC-00

The sixth and seventh characters (bolded for emphasis) indicate the motherboard manufacturer, whereas the eighth character can be used for the model number or the motherboard family (various motherboards using the same chipset).

Note

For lookup tables of these codes, see the following Web sites:

Award Software's official table for manufacturers only is available at www.phoenix.com/pcuser/bios-award-vendors.html.

An expanded list, also containing chipset information (stored in the first five characters of the Award BIOS ID), is available at Wim's BIOS site (www.ping.be/bios/).

Identifying Motherboards with Phoenix or Microid Research BIOS

Unfortunately, neither Phoenix nor Microid Research (MR BIOS) use any type of a standardized motherboard ID number system.

For systems using a Phoenix BIOS, see whether your motherboard or system is listed on the Micro Firmware BIOS upgrades page. Links from this page for Intel and Micronics motherboards list the codes that show up onscreen during boot. Match these codes to your system and you might be able to use a Micro Firmware upgrade. Most MR BIOS (Microid Research BIOS) installations are done as upgrades rather than in original equipment. See the list of supported chipsets (identified by chipset brand and model, not motherboard vendor) and motherboards using Intel's Triton-series chipsets to see whether your system can use an MR BIOS, or contact Microid Research directly for system-specific information.

Accessing the BIOS Setup Programs

The BIOS is configured in one of several ways. Early computers, such as the IBM PC and PC/XT, used DIP switches on the motherboard to set a limited range of BIOS options, including memory size and the number of floppy disk drives. The IBM PC/AT introduced a disk-based configuration utility to cope with the many additional options on 286-based CPUs. Since the late 1980s, most computers have had their BIOS Setup programs incorporated into the BIOS chip itself. The Setup program is accessed on these systems by pressing a key or key combination early in the system startup procedure. Most recent computers display the correct key-stroke(s) to use during the system startup. If not, use Table 3.8 to learn the keystrokes used to start common BIOS types.

Table 3.8 Common Keystrokes Used to Access the BIOS Setup

Program		
BIOS	Keystrokes	Notes
Phoenix BIOS	Ctrl+Alt+Esc	
	Ctrl+Alt+F1	
	Ctrl+Alt+S	
	Ctrl+Alt+Enter	
	Ctrl+Alt+F11	
	Ctrl+Alt+Ins	
Award BIOS	Ctrl+Alt+Esc	
	Esc	
AMI BIOS	Del	

Table 3.8 Common Keystrokes Used to Access the BIOS Setup**Program Continued**

BIOS	Keystrokes	Notes
IBM BIOS	Ctrl+Alt+Ins*F1	*—Early notebook models; press when cursor is in upper-right corner of screen
Compaq BIOS	F10*	Keystroke actually loads Compaq Setup program from hard disk partition; press when cursor is in upper-right corner of screen

Note

See Chapter 5 of *Upgrading and Repairing PCs, 12th Edition* to see how a typical BIOS Setup program operates.

How the BIOS Reports Errors

The BIOS will use three methods for reporting errors: beep codes, error/status codes, and onscreen messages. Error/status codes must be read with a special interface board, whereas the others require no special equipment.

BIOS Beep Codes and Their Purposes

Virtually all systems make a polite “beep” noise when started, but most systems have a special series of beep codes that serve the following purposes.

Beeps alert you to serious system problems, many of which can prevent your system from even starting (a so-called *fatal error*) or from working to its full potential (a so-called *non-fatal error*).

Because most fatal and many non-fatal errors take place before the video subsystem is initialized (or might indicate the video isn’t working), beeps can be used to determine the cause of the problem.

A system that can’t start and is reporting a problem with beep codes will give the code once and then halt. To hear the code again, restart the computer.

Use the following tables of beep codes to determine why your system will not start. To solve the problem reported by the beep codes, repair or replace the device listed in the description. If your repair or replacement has solved the problem, the beep code will no longer sound when you restart the system.

For errors involving removable devices (socketed chips, memory, or video), an easy fix is to remove and replace the item because a device that’s not securely in its socket will cause the test to fail.

Note

For an exhaustive list of BIOS codes, beep codes, and error messages, see the CD accompanying *Upgrading and Repairing PCs, 12th Edition*.

AMI BIOS Beep Codes**Note**

AMI BIOS beep codes used by permission of American Megatrends, Inc.

Beeps	Error Message	Description
1	DRAM Refresh Failure	The memory refresh circuitry on the motherboard is faulty.
2	Parity Error	A parity error occurred in system memory.
3	Base 64KB (First Bank) Memory Failure	Memory failure in the first bank of memory.
4	System Timer Failure	Memory failure in the first bank of memory, or Timer 1 on the motherboard is not functioning.
5	Processor Error	The processor on the motherboard generated an error.
6	Keyboard Controller Gate A20 Failure	The keyboard controller might be bad. The BIOS cannot switch to protected mode.
7	Virtual Mode Processor Exception Interrupt Error	The processor generated an exception interrupt.
8	Display Memory Read/Write Error	The system video adapter is either missing or its memory is faulty.
9	ROM Checksum Error	ROM checksum value does not match the value encoded in BIOS.
10	CMOS Shutdown Register Read/Write Error	The shutdown register for CMOS RAM failed.
11	Cache Error/L2 Cache Bad	The L2 cache is faulty.
1 long, 3 short	Conventional/extended memory failure	The motherboard memory is faulty.
1 long, 8 short	Display/retrace test failed	The video card is faulty; try reseating or moving to a different slot.

Award BIOS Beep Codes

Currently only one beep code exists in the Award BIOS. A single long beep followed by two short beeps indicates that a video error has occurred and the BIOS cannot initialize the video screen to display any additional information.

Phoenix BIOS Beep Codes

The following beep codes are for the current version of Phoenix BIOS, version 4.0, release 6. Other versions will have somewhat different beeps and Port 80h codes. To view the Port 80h codes, you will need a POST diagnostics card with a two-digit LED readout, available from many sources for diagnostic tools. I recommend a PCI-based POST card because ISA slots are becoming obsolete.

Note

Phoenix BIOS beep codes used by permission of Phoenix Technologies, Ltd.

Beeps	Port 80h Code	Explanation
1-2-2-3	16h	BIOS ROM checksum
1-3-1-1	20h	Test DRAM refresh
1-3-1-3	22h	Test keyboard controller
1-3-3-1	28h	Autosize DRAM
1-3-3-2	29h	Initialize POST memory manager
1-3-3-3	2Ah	Clear 512KB base RAM
1-3-4-1	2Ch	RAM failure on address line xxxx
1-3-4-3	2Eh	RAM failure on data bits xxxx of low byte of memory bus
1-4-1-1	30h	RAM failure on data bits xxxx of high byte of memory bus
2-1-2-2	45h	POST device initialization
2-1-2-3	46h	Check ROM copyright notice
2-2-3-1	58h	Test for unexpected interrupts
2-2-4-1	5Ch	Test RAM between 512KB and 640KB
1-2	98h	Search for option ROMs; one long, two short beeps on checksum failure
1	B4h	One short beep before boot

IBM BIOS Beep and Alphanumeric Error Codes

After completing the power on self test (POST), an audio code indicates either a normal condition or that one of several errors has occurred.

Note

IBM BIOS and alphanumeric error codes used by permission of IBM.

Audio Code	Sound Graph	Description
1 short beep	•	Normal POST—system okay
2 short beeps	••	POST error—error code on display
No beep		Power supply, system board
Continuous beep	—————	Power supply, system board
Repeating short beeps	•••••	Power supply, system board
1 long, 1 short beep	-•	System board
1 long, 2 short beeps	-••	Video adapter (MDA/CGA)
1 long, 3 short beeps	-•••	Video adapter (EGA/VGA)
3 long beeps	- - -	3270 keyboard card

Microid Research Beep Codes

The MR BIOS generates patterns of high and low beeps to signal an error condition.

The following beep codes are for the current and recent versions (3.x) of the MR BIOS.

Note

MR BIOS beep codes used by permission of Phoenix Technologies, Ltd.

Port 80h Code	Beep Codes	Error Messages
03h	LH-LLL	ROM-BIOS Checksum Failure
04h	LH-HLL	DMA Page Register Failure
05h	LH-LHL	Keyboard Controller Selftest Failure
08h	LH-HHL	Memory Refresh Circuitry Failure
09h	LH-LLH	Master (16-bit) DMA Controller Failure
09h	LH-HLH	Slave (8-bit) DMA Controller Failure
0Ah	LH-LLLL	Base 64KB Pattern Test Failure
0Ah	LH-HLLL	Base 64KB Parity Circuitry Failure
0Ah	LH-LHLL	Base 64KB Parity Error
0Ah	LH-HHLL	Base 64KB Data Bus Failure
0Ah	LH-LLHL	Base 64KB Address Bus Failure
0Ah	LH-HLHL	Base 64KB Block Access Read Failure
0Ah	LH-LHHL	Base 64KB Block Access Read/Write Failure
0Bh	LH-HHHL	Master 8259 (Port 21) Failure
0Bh	LH-LLLH	Slave 8259 (Port A1) Failure
0Ch	LH-HLLH	Master 8259 (Port 20) Interrupt Address Error

Port 80h Code	Beep Codes	Error Messages
0Ch	LH-LHLH	Slave 8259 (Port A0) Interrupt Address Error
0Ch	LH-HHLH	8259 (Port 20/A0) Interrupt Address Error
0Ch	LH-LLHH	Master 8259 (Port 20) Stuck Interrupt Error
0Ch	LH-HLHH	Slave 8259 (Port A0) Stuck Interrupt Error
0Ch	LH-LHHH	System Timer 8254 CH0/IRQ 0 Interrupt Failure
0Dh	LH-HHHH	8254 Channel 0 (System Timer) Failure
0Eh	LH-LLLLH	8254 Channel 2 (Speaker) Failure
0Eh	LH-LLLLH	8254 OUT2 (Speaker Detect) Failure
0Fh	LH-LLLLH	CMOS RAM Read/Write Test Failure
0Fh	LH-HLLLH	RTC Periodic Interrupt/IRQ 8 Failure
10h	LH-LLLLH	Video ROM Checksum Failure at Address XXXX, Mono Card Memory Error at Address XXXX, Mono Card Memory Address Line Error at Address XXXX, Color Graphics Card Memory Error at Address XXXX, Color Graphics Card Address Line Error at Address XXXX
11h	none	Real Time Clock (RTC) Battery is Discharged
11h	none	Battery Backed Memory (CMOS) is Corrupt
12h	LH-HLHLH	Keyboard Controller Failure
14h	LH-LHHLH	Memory Parity Error_18h_19h
14h	LH-HHHLH	I/O Channel Error_18h_19h
14h 18h 19h	none	RAM Pattern Test Failed at XXXX, Parity Circuit Failure in Bank XXXX, Data Bus Test Failed: Address XXXX, Address Line Test Failed at XXXX, Block Access Read Failure at Address XXXX, Block Access Read/Write Failure: Address XXXX, Banks Decode to Same Location: XXXX and YYYY
12h 15h	none	Keyboard Error—Stuck Key Keyboard Failure or no Keyboard Present
17h	LH-LLLHH	A20 Test Failure Due to 8042 Timeout
17h	LH-HLLHH	A20 Gate Stuck in Disabled State (A20=0)
17h	none	A20 Gate Stuck in Asserted State (A20 Follows CPU)
1Ah	LH-LHLHH	Real Time Clock (RTC) is Not Updating
1Ah	none	Real Time Clock (RTC) Settings are Invalid
1Eh	none	Disk CMOS Configuration is Invalid, Disk Controller Failure, Disk Drive A: Failure, Disk Drive B: Failure
1Fh	none	Fixed Disk CMOS Configuration is Invalid, Fixed Disk C:(80) Failure, Fixed Disk D:(81) Failure, Please Wait for Fixed Disk to Spin Up
20h	none	Fixed Disk, Disk, Serial Port, Parallel Port, Video, Memory, or Numeric Coprocessor Configuration Change
21h	none	System Key is in Locked Position—Turn Key to Unlocked Position
29h	none	Adapter ROM Checksum Failure at Address XXXX

Note for beep codes: L=low tone and H=high tone

Reading BIOS Error Codes

Because beep codes can indicate only some of the problems in a system at startup, most BIOSes also output a series of status codes during the boot procedure. These codes are sent to an I/O port address that can be read by specialized diagnostic cards, which you can purchase from many different vendors. These *POST cards* (so named from the power on self test) feature a two-digit LED panel that displays the status codes output by the BIOS. The simpler POST cards are hard-wired to pick up signals from the most commonly used I/O port address 80hex, but more expensive models can be adjusted with jumper blocks to use other addresses used by certain BIOSes (such as Compaq).

These cards are normally sold with manuals that list the error/status codes. While the cards are durable, the codes can become outdated. To get an updated list of codes, contact the system or BIOS vendor's Web site.

Most POST cards have been based on the ISA bus, but the latest models are now being made to fit into PCI slots because ISA is becoming obsolete. For diagnosing portable systems, and to avoid the need to open a system to insert a POST card, Ultra-X offers a MicroPOST display unit that attaches to the parallel port. Contact Ultra-X at www.uxd.com for more information.

Onscreen Error Messages

An onscreen error message is often the easiest of the error methods to understand, because you don't need to count beeps or open the system to install a POST card. However, because some systems use numeric error codes, and even "plain English" codes need interpretation, these messages can still be a challenge to interpret. Because the video circuits are tested after components such as the motherboard, CPU, and BIOS, an onscreen error message is usually indicative of a less-serious error than one that is reported with beep codes.

Interpreting Error Codes and Messages

Because beep codes, error/status codes, and onscreen messages vary a great deal by BIOS vendor (and sometimes BIOS model), you must know what BIOS a system has before you can choose the correct table. With major-brand systems (and some others), you'll typically find a list of error codes and messages in the system documentation. You can also contact the BIOS or system vendors' Web sites for this information, or check on the CD included with *Upgrading and Repairing PCs, 12th Edition*.

BIOS Configuration Worksheet

BIOS configuration options vary a great deal, and incorrect settings can cause a system to fail, lose data, or not work correctly with PnP-compatible operating systems, such as Windows 9x/2000/Me. The following worksheet can be used to record the most critical BIOS configuration information. Use it when you are unable to print out the actual configuration screens.

System ID _____ **Brand & Model #** _____

Date Recorded _____ **Operating System** _____

Hard Disk Partitions _____

Notes _____

Standard CMOS/BIOS Configuration

(Configuration Option)	(Setting—circle or write down setting used)
<i>Drive A</i>	1.44MB
	2.88MB
	Other _____
	None
<i>Drive B</i>	1.44MB
	2.88MB
	Other _____
	None
<i>1st IDE Drive</i>	<i>Drive Type:</i>
	Hard Disk
	CD-ROM
	Other (specify) _____
	<i>Hard disk Geometry</i>
	<i>Cyl:</i> _____
	<i>Sectors/Track:</i> _____
	<i>Heads:</i> _____
	<i>LBA Y/N:</i>
<i>2nd IDE Drive</i>	<i>Drive Type:</i>
	Hard Disk
	CD-ROM
	Other (specify) _____
	<i>Hard disk Geometry</i>
	<i>Cyl:</i> _____

Standard CMOS/BIOS Configuration

Sectors/Track: ____

Heads: _____

LBA Y/N:

3rd IDE Drive

Drive Type:

Hard Disk

CD-ROM

Other (specify)

Hard disk Geometry

Cyl: _____

Sectors/Track: ____

Heads: _____

LBA Y/N:

4th IDE Drive

Drive Type:

Hard Disk

CD-ROM

Other (specify)

Hard disk Geometry

Cyl: _____

Sectors/Track: ____

Heads: _____

LBA Y/N:

*Other BIOS Configuration Screens**Boot Sequence*

1st drive: ____

2nd drive: _____

3rd drive: _____

4th drive: _____

Anti-Virus or Write-Protect

Enable / Disable

*Boot Sector**PS/2 Mouse*

Enable / Disable

Password

Power On

Password: _____

Setup

Password: _____

*External Memory Cache
(Level 2)*

Enable / Disable

*Internal Memory Cache
(Level 1)*

Enable / Disable

Shadow RAM / ROM Shadowing

Specify Range(s) In Use:

Enable / Disable

USB Ports

Enable / Disable

*USB Legacy Support
(keyboard & mouse)*

Auto / Manual

Memory Timing Configuration

*If Manual, specify changes from system default
below:*

Power Management

Enable / Disable

*If Enabled, specify changes from system default
below:*

Plug and Play (PnP)

Enable / Disable

*If Enabled, specify changes from system default
below:*

LPT Port

Mode Selected:

Standard EPP ECP Bi-Di

Disabled

EPP Version # _____

IRQ: 7 5 _____

DMA for ECP Mode: _____

I/O Port Address:

378H

LPT Port

Mode Selected:

278H

3BCH

Disabled

Serial (COM) Port 1

I/O Port Address:

3FH (COM1)

2FH (COM2)

3EH (COM3)

2EH (COM4)

Disabled

Notes: _____

Serial (COM) Port 2

I/O Port Address:

3FH (COM1)

2FH (COM2)

3EH (COM3)

2EH (COM4)

Disabled

Notes: _____

IDE Hard Disk Interface #1

Interface:

Enable / Disable

32-bit Mode: Enable / Disable

PIO Mode: 0 1 2 3 4

UDMA Mode: 33MHz 66MHz 100MHz

Block Mode: Enable / Disable

of Blocks: _____

IDE Hard Disk Interface #2

Interface:

Enable / Disable

32-bit Mode: Enable / Disable

PIO Mode: 0 1 2 3 4

UDMA Mode: 33MHz 66MHz 100MHz

Block Mode: Enable / Disable

Chapter 4

SCSI and IDE Hard Drives and Optical Drives

Understanding Hard Disk Terminology

When installing IDE hard disks in particular, at least three parameters must be indicated in the BIOS Setup program to define a hard disk.

Note

Understanding how hard drives store data is an enormous topic. If you'd like to learn more, see Chapters 9 and 10 of *Upgrading and Repairing PCs, 12th Edition*, also published by Que.

Heads, Sectors per Track, and Cylinders

If this information is not accurately listed in the BIOS configuration, the full capacity of the drive will not be available unless special hard disk drivers or supplementary BIOS cards are used.

Whenever possible, the computer's own ROM BIOS should fully support the drive's capacity.

For drives larger than 504MB (binary) or 528 million bytes, additional translation options are also required with MS-DOS and Windows to achieve full capacity.

Hard Drive Heads

A hard drive is comprised of one or more platters, normally made of aluminum but occasionally made of glass. These platters are covered with a thin rigid film of magnetized material. The magnetic structures of the platters are read or changed by read/write heads that move across the surface of the platters but are separated from it by a thin cushion of air. Virtually all platters are read from both sides.

Sectors per Track

The magnetic structures stored on the hard disk platters are organized into sectors of 512 data bytes each, plus additional areas in

each sector for identifying the sector location on the hard disk. These sectors form concentric circles numbering from the outside of each platter to the hub area of the platter.

Cylinders

The third factor used to calculate the size of the hard disk is the number of cylinders on the hard disk. The identically positioned tracks on each side of every platter together make up a cylinder.

The BIOS calculates the size of the hard disk in MB—or more often today, GB—from the number of cylinders, the number of heads, and the number of sectors per track. Most BIOSs make this calculation in binary MB or GB (the same way as the hard disk preparation program FDISK does), but a few make the calculation in decimal MB or GB (see Chapter 1, “General Technical Reference,” for the differences in these numbering methods). BIOSs that use decimal MB or GB calculations report the size of the drive the same way that drive manufacturers do. Either way, the same number of bytes will be available *if* the drive is fully and accurately handled by the ROM BIOS and operating system. Most recent and current drives print the cylinder, head, and sectors per track information (collectively called the drive’s *geometry*) on a label on the top of the drive for easy reference during installation.

Note that all three elements of the drive geometry are actually logical, not physical, on IDE drives. This factor explains why the geometry can be translated (see the following), and why some IDE drives in older machines are working, despite being installed with “incorrect” geometries.

Use the worksheet at the end of Chapter 3, “BIOS Configurations and Upgrades,” to record your hard drive geometry and other information for each system you manage.

IDE Hard Drive Identification

Integrated Drive Electronics (IDE), more properly called ATA drives (AT Attachment), are the overwhelming favorite for client PC installations. Although SCSI hard drives (see the following) offer benefits for network and high-performance workstation use, the combination of constantly-improving performance, rock bottom pricing per MB (under 1 cent and falling!), and enormous capacities (up to 75GB and climbing) will continue to make IDE/ATA drives the choice of most users. Figure 4.1 shows the typical IDE drive connectors.

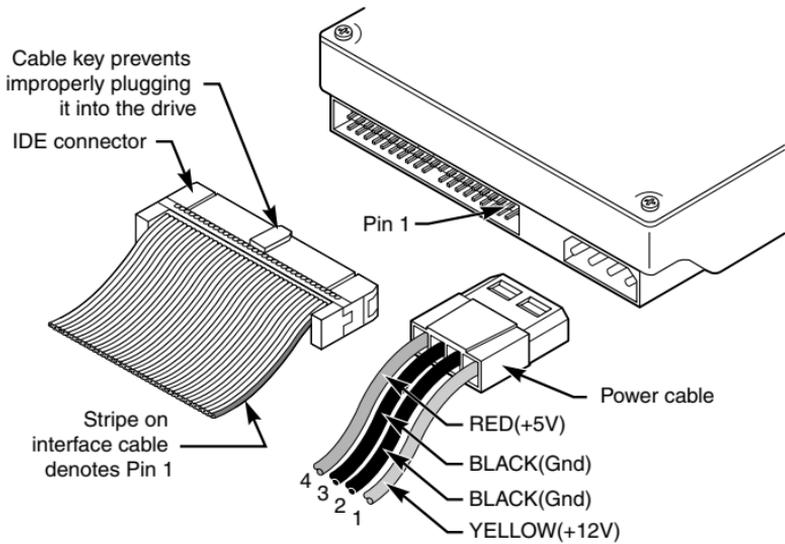


Figure 4.1 Typical ATA (IDE) hard drive connectors.

Master and Slave Drives

As Figure 4.2 demonstrates, virtually every IDE drive interface is designed to handle two drives with a single 40-pin interface cable.

Because the cable has no twist, unlike a typical 34-pin floppy interface cable, jumper blocks must be used on each hard drive to distinguish between the first (or *master*) drive on the cable and the second (or *slave*) drive on the cable.

Most IDE drives can be configured with four possible settings:

- Master (single-drive), also called Single
- Master (dual-drive)
- Slave (dual-drive)
- Cable Select

For virtually all systems, the Cable Select setting can be ignored because it must be used with a non-standard IDE cable. Thus, only three settings are really used, as seen in Table 4.1.

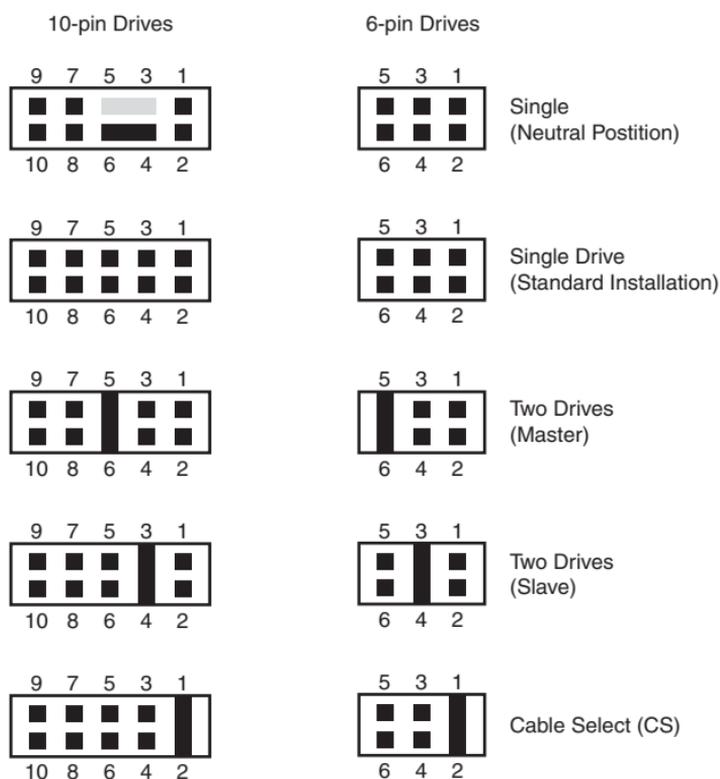


Figure 4.2 ATA (IDE) cable.

Table 4.1 Jumper Settings for Typical ATA IDE-Compatible Drives

Jumper Name	Single-Drive	Dual-Drive Master	Dual-Drive Slave
Master (M/S)	On or off ¹	On	Off
Slave Present (SP)	Off	On	Off

1. Varies with drive; check user documentation.

Use Table 4.1 as a general guideline only. Follow your drive manufacturer's recommendations if they vary.

The jumpers on the hard drive might be located on the back of the drive (between the power and data connectors) or on the bottom of the drive. Typical hard disk jumpers are shown in Figure 4.3.

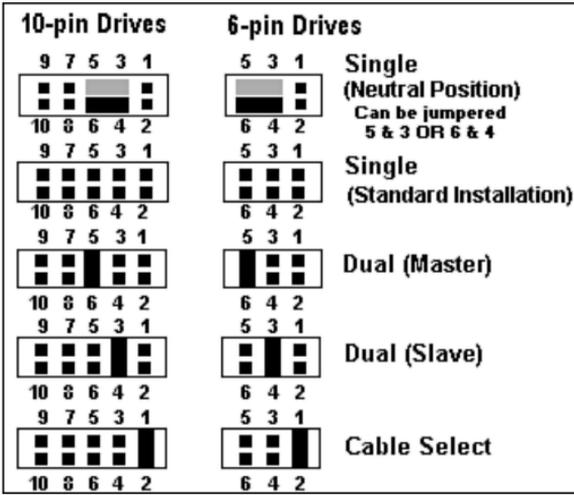


Figure 4.3 ATA (IDE) drive jumpers. Many drives now have eight, nine, or ten jumper pins to allow for special configurations required on some systems to break the 528-million-byte drive barrier (see the following sections).

Breaking the 504MB (528-Million-Byte) Drive Barrier

Because IDE was developed in the late 1980s, the combination of MS-DOS's limit of 1,024 cylinders, the standard BIOS's limit of 16 heads, and the IDE interface's limitation of 63 sectors per track limited the original size of IDE drives to 504MB (about 528 million bytes). This limit was merely theoretical until 1994, when IDE drives larger than this began to appear. A revised version of the IDE/ATA standard, ATA-2 (also called *enhanced IDE*) defined an enhanced BIOS to avoid these limits.

An enhanced BIOS circumvents the limits by using a different geometry when talking to the drive than when talking to the software. What happens in between is called *translation*. For example, if your drive has 2,000 cylinders and 16 heads, a translating BIOS will make programs think that the drive has 1,000 cylinders and 32 heads. The most common translation methods are listed in Table 4.2. These methods are also followed by newer versions of the ATA specification, such as ATA-3 and above.

Table 4.2 ATA-2 Translation Methods

BIOS Mode	Operating System to BIOS	BIOS to Drive Ports
Standard CHS	Logical CHS Parameters	Logical CHS Parameters
Extended CHS	Translated CHS Parameters	Logical CHS Parameters
LBA	Translated CHS Parameters	LBA Parameters

A BIOS that supports only Standard CHS recognizes only a maximum of 1,024 cylinders, 16 heads, and 63 sectors per track for any IDE/ATA drive. Thus, if you install a 6.4GB IDE/ATA drive in a system with this type of BIOS, it will recognize only 504MB with MS-DOS and Windows. Non-DOS operating systems such as Novell NetWare, UNIX, and Linux don't require translation if they will be the only operating system on the disk partition.

On systems that provide translation, this BIOS mode is called *Normal* because the geometry isn't changed. Configuring a drive to use Normal mode is correct for operating systems such as UNIX, Linux, and Novell NetWare, but not for systems that use MS-DOS file structures, including MS-DOS itself, Windows 9x/NT/2000/Me, and OS/2.

The other two modes, Extended CHS and LBA (Logical Block Addressing), do translate the geometry. Extended CHS is also called *Large* mode and is recommended only for >504MB drives that cannot be operated in LBA mode. Most enhanced BIOSs don't offer Large mode, but all offer LBA mode. However, a few (such as older Acer BIOSs) might call it something different, such as DOS mode or >504MB mode.

Using LBA Mode

LBA mode can be enabled in two ways, depending on the BIOS. On most current BIOSs, using the automatic detection option in the BIOS or during system boot will detect the basic hard drive geometry and select LBA mode automatically. On some BIOSs, though, the automatic detection sets up the basic cylinder-head-sectors per track drive geometry but doesn't enable LBA mode unless you set it yourself. Depending on the BIOS release used by a given system, the LBA mode setting can be performed on the same BIOS configuration screen used for standard drive configuration, or it might be located on an Advanced CMOS configuration or Peripheral Setup screen.

A BIOS that performs LBA translation should enable you to use an IDE hard drive as large as 8.4GB with MS-DOS. If you find that you can use a 2.1GB hard disk, but not larger ones, the version of LBA mode supported by your BIOS is a very early version, and your BIOS should be updated. Support for drives larger than 8.4GB is discussed later in this chapter.

When LBA Mode Is Necessary—and When Not to Use It

Use Table 4.3 to determine when to use LBA mode.

Table 4.3 Using LBA Mode

Drive Size	Operating System	Use LBA Mode	Reason
<=504MB	Any	No	Not necessary
>504MB	MS-DOS, Windows 9x/ NT/2000, OS/2	Yes	Drive will be limited to 504MB without LBA mode because of 1,024-cylinder limit
>504MB	Linux, UNIX, Novell NetWare	No	No 1,024-cylinder limit with these operating systems

Problems with LBA Support in the BIOS

Ideally, LBA mode would be automatically enabled in a clearly understood way on every system with an enhanced BIOS. And, it would also be easy to know when you did *not* need to use it. Unfortunately, this is often not the case.

Many 1994–1996 versions of the AMI text-based and graphical (WinBIOS) BIOSs listed the basic hard drive geometry on one screen and listed the LBA mode option on a different screen altogether. To make matters worse, the automatic drive setup options on many of these BIOSs didn't set the LBA mode for you; you had to find it and then set it. But perhaps the worst problem of all was for users who had carefully set the LBA mode and then ran into problems with other BIOS configurations. Most AMI BIOS versions offer a feature called *Automatic configuration* with either BIOS/Optimal defaults (high performance) or Power-On/Fail-Safe defaults (low performance). In AMI BIOSs in which the LBA mode was *not* listed on the same screen with the hard disk geometry, *any* automatic configuration would reset LBA mode to its default setting—off.

Because the location of the LBA setting can vary from system to system, always verify that LBA mode is still enabled if you make any changes to a BIOS configuration on systems that use LBA mode.

Dangers of Altering Translation Settings

Depending on the operating system and drive configuration, one of several unpleasant events takes place when LBA translation is turned off after a drive is configured using LBA. Table 4.4 summarizes these problems—some of which can be fatal to data!

Table 4.4 Problems Associated with Disabling LBA Mode

Drive Configuration	Operating System	Symptom	End Result
C: and D: partitions on single physical drive	MS-DOS	Can't access D: because part of it is beyond cylinder 1024.	Usually no harm to data, because drive is inaccessible until LBA mode is reset
C: or C:, D:, etc.	Windows 9x, Windows 2000, Windows NT, Windows Me	Can't boot drive because of incorrect geometry.	Usually no harm to data because drive is inaccessible until LBA mode is reset
C: only	MS-DOS	System boots and operates normally until data is written to a cylinder beyond 1024.	Drive wraps around to cylinder 0 (location of partition table and other vital disk structures) because LBA translation to access cylinders past 1024 is absent; drive overwrites beginning of disk, causing loss of all data

I used the last scenario in a computer troubleshooting class a few times, and it was quite a surprise to see a hard disk “eat” itself! However, it is never a good idea to “play” with LBA translation after it has been set in a system.

Detecting Lack of LBA Mode Support in Your System

To determine whether your system lacks LBA support or doesn't have LBA support enabled, do the following:

1. Install the hard drive set for Master, Slave, or Cable Select as appropriate.
2. Turn on the computer and detect the drive in the BIOS Setup program. Note the size of the drive reported.
3. Boot the computer from a floppy disk containing the operating system and FDISK.
4. Select the drive you want to view with option #5.

5. Use the #4 option—View Current Partitions—and check what capacity FDISK reports.
6. If FDISK reports the drive size as only 504MB and the drive is larger, LBA support is lacking or is not enabled.
7. Enable LBA mode and try steps 2–5 again. If FDISK reports the same or similar size to what the BIOS reports, your drive is being translated correctly by the BIOS if your hard disk is ≤ 8.4 GB. If FDISK still reports a size significantly less than your hard disk’s actual capacity, see Table 4.5 for solutions.
8. If your hard disk is >8.4 GB *and* you are using Windows 9x/2000/Me/NT, the size that FDISK should report might be *greater* than what the BIOS displays. If FDISK reports only 8.4GB and the hard disk is larger, see Table 4.5 for solutions.

Note

Remember that hard drive manufacturers rate their hard disks in decimal MB or GB, and most BIOSs follow the FDISK standard for rating drives in binary MB or GB. See the MB, GB, and TB translation table (Table 1.2) in Chapter 1 for equivalents.

9. If you can’t start the computer after installing the new hard drive, the BIOS is incapable of handling the drive’s geometry. See Table 4.8 for solutions.

Using FDISK to Determine Compatibility Problems Between the Hard Disk and BIOS

A mismatch between the capacity that FDISK reports for a hard disk and what the BIOS reports for the hard disk indicates a problem with LBA translation or with support for hard disks above 8.4GB.

FDISK can also be used to determine when the dangerous “DOS wraparound” condition exists, in which a drive prepared with LBA translation has the LBA translation turned off.

I’ve included a mock-up of how the FDISK Display Partition Information screen appears. See the discussion of LBA mode earlier in this chapter for solutions. In Figure 4.7, FDISK indicates no problems, because the values for X (size of hard disk partition) and Y (total size of drive) are equal.

```

Display Partition Information      Current fixed
disk drive: 1
Label  Mbytes  System  Usage      C: 1
A      PRI  DOS

```

```

Partition  Status  Type   Volume
W95US1U   1626  FAT16  100%
          X
    
```

Total disk space is 1626 Mbytes (1 Mbyte = 1048576 bytes)

Y

Press Esc to continue

x=Size of hard disk partition (drive has already been FDISKed)

y=Total disk space (as seen by FDISK)

Use Table 4.5 to determine what the FDISK total disk space figure is telling you about your system.

Table 4.5 FDISK Disk Space Detected as a Guide to Disk Problems

X Value ¹	Y Value ²	Drive Size	Underlying Cause
>504MB	=504MB	>504MB Binary /FDISK (528MB Decimal)	Drive was prepared with LBA mode enabled, but LBA mode has been disabled in BIOS. See "Dangers of Altering Translation Settings" earlier in this chapter.
Not listed	=504MB	>504MB	LBA mode not enabled in BIOS or not present.
Not listed	8192MB	>8192MB (8.38 billion bytes)	BIOS supports LBA mode, but not Extended Int13h modes.

1. The X value appears only when a drive has already been FDISKed.
2. The Y value appears on any drive being viewed through FDISK, whether the FDISK process has been completed or not.

For more information about using FDISK, see the section "Using FDISK" later in this chapter.

Getting LBA and Extended Int13h Support for Your System

If your computer is incapable of detecting the full capacity of your hard disk or locks up after you install the hard drive, your BIOS is not compatible with your hard drive. Use Table 4.6 to determine the causes and solutions that will help you get full capacity from your new hard disk with maximum safety.

Table 4.6 Why IDE Drive Is Not Detected at Full Capacity

Symptom	Drive Size	Operating System	Cause	Solution
System locks up after installing new drive.	>2.1GB	Any	BIOS cannot handle 4,096 cylinders or more even with LBA enabled.	Upgrade BIOS (see Table 4.7).
	>32GB	Any	BIOS cannot handle capacity even with LBA enabled.	Upgrade BIOS (see Table 4.7).
Full capacity not available.	>504MB–8.4GB	MS-DOS, Windows 9x/NT/2000, OS/2	No LBA mode or inadequate LBA support in BIOS.	Upgrade BIOS (see Table 4.7).
	>8.4GB	Windows NT	Atapi.sys not correct version; BIOS lacks Extended Int13h support, required for large drives.	Update Atapi.sys (included in SP3 or above of NT 4.0) and upgrade BIOS if necessary (see Table 4.7).
	>8.4GB	Novell NetWare 4.11	Drivers are needed to support drive at full capacity.	Contact Novell for drivers; NetWare 5 will support >8.4GB drives; upgrade BIOS if necessary.
	>8.4GB	IBM OS/2 Warp	Patch needed to support drive at full capacity.	Contact IBM for patch file; upgrade BIOS if necessary.
	>8.4GB	Windows 9x Windows 2000 Windows Me	Windows 9x has Enhanced Int13h support for drive, but BIOS lacks support.	Upgrade BIOS (see Table 4.7).
	>8.4GB	MS-DOS	MS-DOS can't use IDE drives above 8.4GB.	Buy 8.4GB or below; update to Windows 9x; use SCSI drives; use big.

Determining Whether Your System Supports Extended Int13h

Drives that are 8.4GB or larger require Extended Int13h support in the BIOS to be accessible at full capacity. This size represents a second barrier to drive capacity for MS-DOS, and one that cannot be

overcome without changing to a different type of drive (SCSI) or making the move to Windows 9x/2000/Me.

Even if you have updated versions of operating systems that support IDE capacities beyond 8.4GB, your BIOS must also offer this support. Table 4.7 describes the differences between how LBA and Extended Int13h drive support work.

Table 4.7 LBA Mode Versus Extended Int13h

Mode	Setting	BIOS Drive Capacity Listing
LBA	Must be set in BIOS by user or automatically by drive-type detection.	Indicates full capacity of drive; might or might not indicate translation in BIOS.
Extended Int13h	Automatically enabled when LBA mode is enabled on systems that support Extended Int13h functions.	BIOS configuration might or might not indicate full capacity of drive.

This support is not “visible” in the BIOS; there is no Enhanced Int13h option to enable as there is with LBA mode.

Also, in some cases, the geometry reported by drives of varying sizes doesn’t change either. On a system that supports Extended Int13h but doesn’t display the full drive capacity in the BIOS configuration, an 8.4GB hard disk will report a geometry to the BIOS of 16 heads, 16,383 cylinders, and 63 sectors per track, and a 20.4GB hard disk reports the same geometry! Support of hard disks beyond 8.4GB on some systems breaks the usual rule about the BIOS configuration matching the drive’s capacity.

As with the previously mentioned LBA mode issues, use FDISK to determine whether your system supports your greater-than-8.4GB IDE hard drive at full capacity.

Drive Capacity Issues in Microsoft Windows 95 and 98

Table 4.8 lists the capacity limitations and issues for Windows 95 and 98.

Table 4.8 Drive Capacity Issues for Windows 95 and 98

Windows Version	Drive Capacity Limitation	Fix
Windows 95 (all releases)	32GB	None; upgrade to Windows 98, NT, 2000, or Me before installing larger hard drive. See Microsoft online document Q246818 for details.

Table 4.8 Drive Capacity Issues for Windows 95 and 98 Continued

Windows Version	Drive Capacity Limitation	Fix
Windows 98 (all releases)	32GB and up	Graphical version of ScanDisk lists errors for all sectors beyond 32GB on some systems using Phoenix BIOS with BitShift IDE drive translation. See Microsoft online document Q243450 for download (Microsoft Knowledgebase). Use command-line ScanDisk as a workaround.
Windows 98 (all releases)	64GB and up	Drive works at full capacity, but FDISK reports capacity as 64GB lower than actual; see Microsoft online document Q263044 for patch download instructions.
Windows 98 (all releases)	64GB and up	FORMAT run from command line reports capacity as 64GB lower than actual, but FORMAT works correctly; use FORMAT option within Windows Explorer as a workaround. See Microsoft online document Q263045.

Sources for BIOS Upgrades and Alternatives for Large IDE Hard Disk Support

If your BIOS doesn't support the full capacity of your hard disk, use Table 4.9 to choose your best solution.

Table 4.9 Sources for BIOS and Alternative Support for Large Hard Drives

Solution	Benefits	Cost	Concerns
Upgrade BIOS.	Best all-around solution to hard disk and other support issues.	Free if BIOS is Flash type and is supported by motherboard or system maker. If BIOS is no longer supported by MB or manufacturer, purchase upgrade.	Be sure to correctly identify your system or motherboard before installing the upgrade; test afterward (see Chapter 3 for details). See Chapter 3 for sources and system details.

Table 4.9 Sources for BIOS and Alternative Support for Large Hard Drives Continued

Solution	Benefits	Cost	Concerns
Purchase BIOS upgrade card.	May be less expensive than purchasing BIOS replacement or new motherboard; fast, easy install.	\$35–\$75; can be combined with Y2K date-rollover support or UDMA 33/66 features.	Make sure card is designed for full capacity of your hard disk; many early versions had 2.1GB or 8.4GB limits; requires open ISA or PCI slot.
Use BIOS replacement feature in hard disk installation software supplied with drive.	You probably received a copy of it with your drive.	Download it from your hard disk vendor if your drive didn't come with a copy.	Worst choice for large hard disk support because software drivers and non-standard disk structures can be altered and destroyed very easily.

After you decide on a strategy for handling the full capacity of your hard disk, don't change it! Don't use a BIOS replacement option in a program such as Disk Manager or EZ-Drive and then decide to install a BIOS upgrade (flash, chip, or card). The BIOS support won't be capable of working with your drive because it's already being translated by the software. Make your choice before you finish your drive installation.

Standard and Alternative Jumper Settings

If you decide to use the BIOS replacement software shipped with the hard drive instead of downloading or purchasing a BIOS upgrade, you might need to use alternative jumper settings on your hard disk. An example of these settings as used by some Western Digital drives with capacities at 32GB or above is shown in Figure 4.4. Many other drive makers use similar approaches to deal with this problem, as well as with the previous capacity limitation of 2.5GB seen with older systems. Note that two jumper blocks are used; the normal master and slave jumper block plus a second jumper block to reduce the reported capacity of the drive.

The Normal configurations (top) are used for IDE drives installed in systems whose BIOSs can handle drives with capacities over 32GB.

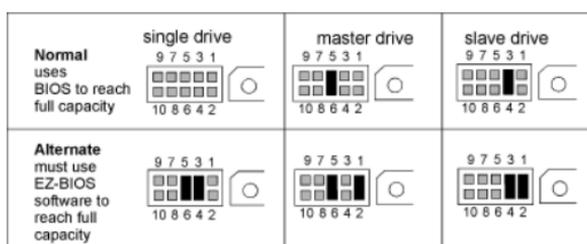


Figure 4.4 Normal (top) and Alternative (bottom) jumpers for Western Digital 32GB or larger IDE hard disks with 10-pin jumper blocks.

The Alternate configurations (bottom) are used to limit the drive's reported capacity to less than 32GB. This configuration is required if installing a drive with more than 32GB of capacity causes the system to lock up because of BIOS incompatibilities. This condition affects many systems with BIOS dates before 6/1/1999. While jumpering details vary from brand to brand, two jumper blocks are used in almost all cases.

A drive configured this way requires the use of EZ-Drive, MAXBlast, or other drive-manufacturer-supplied disk utility programs to access the full capacity of the drive. In some cases, the system might need to be shut down at the end of a session rather than warm-booted. Check with the drive manufacturer for details on using this configuration with Windows NT/2000 or with Linux, UNIX, or Novell NetWare.

Improving Hard Disk Speed

Although the ATA-2/EIDE standard is best known for establishing LBA mode as a means of allowing larger hard drives to be used on the IDE interface, a second major benefit of ATA-2/EIDE was improving data transfer rates, as shown in Table 4.10.

Table 4.10 PIO Modes and Transfer Rates

PIO Mode	Cycle Time (ns)	Transfer Rate (MB/Sec)	Specification
0	600	3.33	ATA
1	383	5.22	ATA
2	240	8.33	ATA
3	180	11.11	ATA-2, EIDE, fast-ATA
4	120	16.67	ATA-2, EIDE, fast-ATA

PIO modes 0–2 could be achieved with the original 16-bit motherboard or expansion slot-based IDE/ATA host adapters, but PIO

modes 3 and above require a local-bus connection—either VL-Bus, PCI card, or (most often) a PCI motherboard connection.

The first ATA-2/EIDE hard drives introduced in 1994 were capable of PIO 3 transfer rates, but newer drives run at PIO 4 transfer rates or above. Most recent BIOSs detect the correct PIO mode as well as the basic drive geometry and set it for you. On BIOSs that offer a PIO mode setting that you must make manually, consult the drive vendor for the correct mode. Setting the PIO mode too high will cause data corruption.

Ultra DMA

The newest hard drives and motherboards support an even faster method of data transfer called Ultra DMA, or UDMA for short. See Table 4.11 for common Ultra DMA modes.

Table 4.11 Common Ultra DMA Modes

UDMA Mode	Transfer Rate (MB/Sec)	Specification
2	33.33	ATA-4, Ultra-ATA/33
4	66.67	ATA-5, Ultra-ATA/66
5	100.00	Ultra-ATA/100

With both PIO and UDMA modes, the transfer rates listed are maximum (burst) transfer rates; sustained rates are much slower. Nevertheless, you will want to run your hard disk at the highest PIO or UDMA mode it's capable of.

UDMA/66 and UDMA/100 Issues

Most of the greater-than-10GB hard drives now on the market are designed to support UDMA/66 (also called Ultra ATA-66) *if* certain requirements are met; many larger drives also support the even faster UDMA/1000 standard introduced in the summer of 2000. Table 4.12 lists the requirements for UDMA/66 and UDMA/100 compliance.

Table 4.12 Ultra DMA/66 and UDMA/100 Requirements

Item	Features	Notes
Drive	Drive must have firmware for desired mode.	Some drives automatically sense compliance; others require you to run a configuration program to enable the mode; consult drive vendor.
Motherboard chipset	Must have UDMA/66 or UDMA/100 support.	Check system or MB vendor for compliance; for highest performance, you should also install an UDMA device driver for operating system (see Table 4.13).

Table 4.12 Ultra DMA/66 and UDMA/100 Requirements Continued

Item	Features	Notes
		If motherboard can't run drive at full speed, you can add a UDMA/66 or UDMA/100 PCI-based IDE interface card from sources such as SIIG (www.siig.com) or Promise Technologies (www.promise.com).
Cable	Cable must be 80-wire cable (40 data wires separated by 40 ground wires).	Connect blue end of UDMA/66 and UDMA/100 data cable to motherboard to ensure proper operation.

Any system that cannot run the drive at UDMA/66 or UDMA/100 can use the drive at the system's maximum speed (UDMA/33, PIO 4, and so on).

See Figure 4.5 for a comparison of a standard IDE 40-wire cable with an 80-wire cable required for UDMA/66 and UDMA/100 operation.

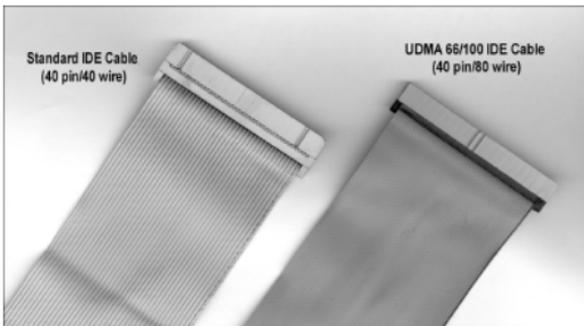


Figure 4.5 A standard 40-wire IDE cable (left) compared to an 80-wire UDMA/66-100 IDE cable (right). Both cables use the same 40-pin connector. The standard cable's 40 wires give the cable a pronounced ridged appearance when compared to the smaller and finer wires in the 80-wire cable.

Bus-Mastering Chipsets for IDE

Most late-model Pentium-class and higher motherboards can support bus-mastering drivers for their IDE interfaces. The benefits of bus-mastering include faster IDE data transfer for CD-ROM, CD-R/CD-RW, and hard drives, and lower CPU utilization rates (the percentage of total time the CPU spends handling a particular task). Table 4.13 lists the major chipsets providing bus-mastering features and where to get the driver. Be sure you install the correct driver for your chipset.

Even if you enable UDMA/33 or faster UDMA modes in your system BIOS, you must install the bus-mastering driver for your hardware and operating system to get the maximum benefit out of your UDMA-compatible drives.

Table 4.13 Bus-Mastering Chipsets by Vendor and Operating System

Vendor	Chipsets	Driver Source by Operating System
Intel	430FX 430HX 430VX 440FX 430TX 440LX 440BX 440EX 440GX 440ZX 440ZX-66 450NX	(Same driver for all Intel chipsets at left) Windows 95 original and OSR1 (95a): Download BM-IDE driver from the Intel Web site. Windows 95B, 95C (OSR 2.x), Windows 98: Included on Windows CD-ROM.
Intel	810 810E 820 840	Download Ultra ATA Storage Driver (version 5.x or above) from Intel Web site. Works with Windows 98, 98SE, Windows 2000, and Windows NT 4.0. All but Windows 2000 require use of Chipset Software Installation Utility; download from Intel Web site.
VIA Apollo	KX133 Pro 133A Pro Plus Pro PM-601 MPV4 MVP3 VP3 VP2 VPX VP1	For Windows 95 (any version) and NT 3.51 and higher: Download the drivers from the VIA Web site. For Windows 98, 2000, Me: Included on CD-ROM.
SiS	611 85c496 5513**, 5581/5582, 5591, 5571*** 5597/5598, 5600 IDE Driver* SiS530/5595 & SiS620/5595 IDE Driver	Download the drivers from the SiS Web site. *(For SiS chipsets 5511/5512/5513, 5596/5513, 5571, 5581/5582, 5598/5597, 5591/5595, 600/5595) **(Separate driver available for use with Windows 2000) *** (Separate driver available for use with Windows 98)
ETEQ	Various motherboard models	See www.soyo.com.tw to look up models and drivers; download there or from related FTP site.

Table 4.13 Bus-Mastering Chipsets by Vendor and Operating System Continued

Vendor	Chipsets	Driver Source by Operating System
PCChips	Various motherboard models	See www.pcchips.com to look up IDE drivers by model and operating system (Windows 95, 98, and Windows NT 4.0).
Ali (Acer Labs) (see note) Aladdin V Aladdin Pro2 Linux www.acerlabs.com	Aladdin III Aladdin IV Windows 95/98/NT	Windows 95/NT

All Intel chipsets that contain a PIIXn device (PIIX, PIIX3, PIIX4, PIIX4E, and so on) are bus-mastering chipsets.

Although PCChips chipset names are similar to certain Intel Pentium chipsets (Triton series TX, HX, and VX), the drivers listed are strictly for PCChips chipsets, not Intel's.

ALi (Acer Labs) recommends checking with motherboard manufacturers' Web sites first for drivers because drivers might be customized for a particular vendor's products.

Benefits of Manual Drive Typing

Even though virtually every BIOS used since the mid-1990s supports automatic drive detection (also called *drive typing*) at startup, a couple of benefits to performing this task within the BIOS configuration screen do exist:

- In the event that you need to move the drive to another system, you'll know the drive geometry and translation scheme (such as LBA) that was used to access the drive. If the drive is moved to another computer, the identical drive geometry (cylinder, head, sectors per track) and translation scheme must be used in the other computer; otherwise, the data on the drive will not be accessible and can be lost. Because many systems with autoconfiguration don't display these settings during the startup process, performing the drive-typing operation yourself might be the only way to get this information.
- If you want to remove a drive that is already in use and the BIOS displays the drive geometry, write it down! Because the IDE interface enables a drive to work with *any* defined geometry that doesn't exceed the drive's capacity, the current BIOS configuration for any given drive might *not* be what the manufacturer recommends (and what would be detected by the BIOS, using the IDE identify drive command). I ran a 203MB Conner drive successfully for years with an incorrect BIOS setting that provided 202MB, because technical information about drives in the early days of IDE wasn't always

easy to get. Drives working with the “wrong” geometry should *not* be “corrected” because this would require a complete backup of the drive and resetting the geometry in the BIOS, FDISK, FORMAT, and restore. Just label the drive with the actual head, cylinder, and sectors per track it uses now.

Troubleshooting IDE Installation

In addition to the BIOS capacity and PIO/UDMA mode configuration issues, you might run into other problems during an IDE drive installation. Use Table 4.14 to determine problems, causes, and solutions.

Table 4.14 Other IDE Drive Installation Problems and Solutions

Problem	Causes	Solution
Drive is not recognized by BIOS, but system will boot from floppy (drive is spinning).	Drive cabling installed incorrectly.	Make sure pin 1 on IDE interface and IDE drive are connected to pin 1 (colored edge) of IDE cable; some cables are keyed with a plugged hole at pin 20 or with a “bump” over the middle of the cable that corresponds with a cutout in the plastic skirt that surrounds the cable. On non-skirted motherboard IDE connectors, make sure pins are connected to both rows of the cable, without any offsets.
System display remains blank after power on. No boot or other activity.	Drive cabling reversed; pin 1 is connected to pin 39 at either drive or interface connector.	Many systems cannot initialize the video card until the IDE hard drive is successfully initialized. Use of keyed cables will help to eliminate this problem (see previous tip).
Drive not recognized by BIOS, but system will boot from floppy (drive is not spinning).	Drive power cable is not connected or defective.	If a Y-splitter or power extender is in use, check it for damage or remove it and plug drive directly to power supply; make sure Molex power connector is tightly inserted into drive; use a Digital Multimeter (DMM) to check power leads; drive might be defective if power checks out okay.
One or both IDE drives on a single cable are not recognized by system (drives are spinning).	Drives might be jumpered incorrectly: both as master or both as slave.	Jumper boot drive as master, second drive.

Table 4.14 Other IDE Drive Installation Problems and Solutions**Continued**

Problem	Causes	Solution
One or both IDE drives on a single cable are not recognized by system (drives are spinning and are jumpered correctly).	Drives might not be 100% compliant with ATA standards (very likely when trying to mix various brands of IDE drives, especially older ones).	Reverse master and slave jumpering; move second drive to other IDE connector and jumper both drives accordingly.

SCSI

The small computer system interface (SCSI) is a very flexible and high-performance drive and device interface. In addition to supporting hard drives, it also can support non-bootable optical and tape storage, scanners, and many other device types.

SCSI Types and Data Transfer Rates

While many types of SCSI exist, different SCSI types can be mixed on the same host adapter. For best results, you should buy a host adapter capable of running your fastest devices at their top speeds *and* one that enables various types of devices to run without slowing each other down. Use Table 4.15 to learn common SCSI types and their characteristics.

Table 4.15 SCSI Data-Transfer Rates

Bus Width	Standard SCSI	Fast SCSI ¹	Fast-20 (Ultra) ²	Fast-40 (Ultra2) ²	Fast-80 (Ultra3) ²	Cable Type
8-bit (narrow)	5MB/sec	10MB/sec	20MB/sec	40MB/sec	80MB/sec	A (50-pin)
16-bit (wide)	10MB/sec	20MB/sec	40MB/sec	80MB/sec	160MB/sec ³	P (68-pin)

1. SCSI-2
2. SCSI-3
3. Ultra2Wide

Note

The A cable is the standard 50-pin SCSI cable, whereas the P cable is a 68-pin cable designed for 16-bit. Maximum cable length is 6 meters (about 20 feet) for standard speed SCSI, and only 3 meters (about 10 feet) for Fast/Fast-20/Fast-40 (Ultra) SCSI. Ultra2Wide allows cable lengths up to 12 meters (about 40 feet!).

Single-Ended Versus Differential SCSI

SCSI is not only a flexible interface, it's also a multi-platform interface. Traditionally, PCs have used single-ended SCSI, whereas other platforms use differential SCSI. Because these two types of SCSI are not interchangeable, you should never mix them on a host adapter designed for single-ended SCSI. Use the markings in Figure 4.6 to distinguish between these.

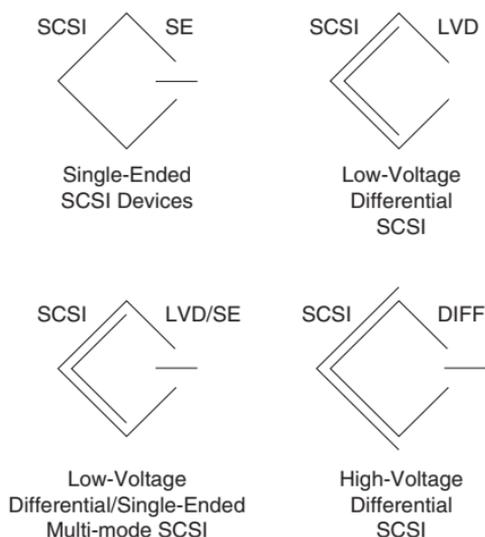


Figure 4.6 Single-ended and differential SCSI universal symbols.

Low-Voltage Differential Devices

Ultra2Wide SCSI devices, which run at 80MB/sec maximum transfer rates, use a modified version of differential SCSI called low-voltage differential (LVD). Workstation-oriented cards, such as Adaptec's AHA-2940U2W, enable the use of LVD Ultra2Wide devices and

standard single-ended SCSI devices on the same card. Cards with this feature use two buses—one for LVD and one for standard SCSI devices.

Note

If you do need to use single-ended and differential SCSI devices on the same cable, adapters are available that will safely handle the connection. Paralan Corporation (4655 Ruffner St., San Diego, CA 92111, Tel.: (858) 560-7266; Fax: (858) 560-8929, www.paralan.com) offers the SD10B and SD16B adapters.

Recognizing SCSI Interface Cables and Connectors

Because SCSI is actually a family of standards, each with its own cable and connector, matching cables and connectors to the appropriate SCSI “family member” is important. Use the following figures to determine this information.

8-Bit SCSI Centronics 50-Pin Connector

Older, narrow (8-bit) SCSI adapters and external devices use a full-size Centronics type connector that normally has wire latches on each side to secure the cable connector. Figure 4.7 shows what the low-density, 50-pin SCSI connector looks like.

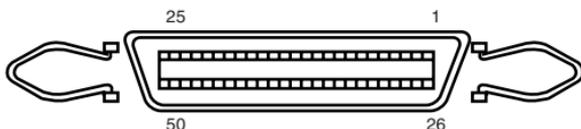


Figure 4.7 Low-density, 50-pin SCSI connector.

SCSI-2 High-Density Connector

The SCSI-2 revision added a high-density, 50-position, D-shell connector option for the A-cable connectors. This connector now is called Alternative 1. Figure 4.8 shows the 50-pin high-density SCSI connector.

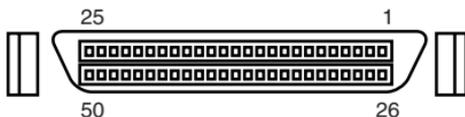


Figure 4.8 High-density, 50-pin SCSI connector.

The Alternative 2 Centronics latch-style connector remains unchanged from SCSI-1.

SCSI-3 68-Pin P Cable

A new 68-conductor P cable was developed as part of the SCSI-3 specification. Shielded and unshielded high-density D-shell connectors are specified for both the A and P cable. The shielded high-density connectors use a squeeze-to-release latch rather than the wire latch used on the Centronics-style connectors. Active termination for single-ended buses is specified, providing a high level of signal integrity. Figure 4.9 shows the 68-pin high density SCSI connector.

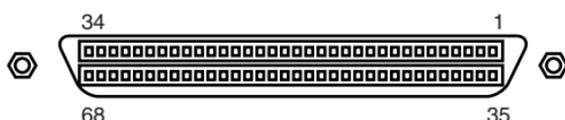


Figure 4.9 High-density, 68-pin SCSI connector.

RAID Array, Hot Swappable 80-Pin Connector

Drive arrays normally use special SCSI drives with what is called an 80-pin Alternative-4 connector, which is capable of wide SCSI and also includes power signals. Drives with the 80-pin connector are normally *hot swappable*—they can be removed and installed with the power on—in drive arrays. The 80-pin Alt-4 connector is shown in Figure 4.10.

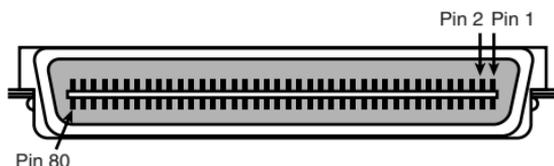


Figure 4.10 80-pin Alt-4 SCSI connector.

Apple and some other non-standard implementations from other vendors (such as Iomega SCSI Zip drives) used a 25-pin cable and connector for SCSI devices.

They did this by eliminating most of the grounds from the cable, which unfortunately resulted in a noisy, error-prone connection. I don't recommend using 25-pin cables and connectors; you should avoid them if possible. The connector used in these cases was a standard female DB-25 connector, which looks exactly like a PC parallel port (printer) connector. Unfortunately, it is possible to

damage equipment by plugging printers into DB-25 SCSI connectors or by plugging SCSI devices into DB-25 printer connectors. So, if you use this type of SCSI connection, be sure it is marked well, because it's impossible to tell DB-25 SCSI from DB-25 parallel printer connectors by looking at them. The DB-25 connector is shown in Figure 4.11.

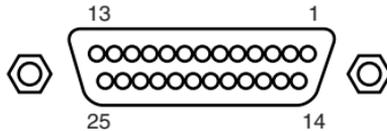


Figure 4.11 DB-25 SCSI connector.

Again, I recommend you avoid making SCSI connections using this type of cable or connector. If you must use this type of device, add it to the end of the daisy-chain. The 25-wire connector can prevent important signals from reaching devices designed to use 50-pin connectors, causing them to not be initialized and not function.

SCSI Drive and Device Configuration

SCSI drives (and other devices) are not too difficult to configure, but they are more complicated than IDE drives. The SCSI standard controls the way the drives must be set up. You need to set two items when you configure a SCSI drive or device:

- SCSI ID setting (0–7 or 0–15)
- Terminating resistors

The number of SCSI IDs available on a host adapter depends on its design: 0–7 on SCSI adapters with an 8-bit bus; 0–15 on SCSI adapters with a 16-bit bus; two groups of 0–15 on a 16-bit bus with a dual-processor host bus adapter.

SCSI Device ID

Up to 7 SCSI devices (plus the adapter, for a total of 8) can be used on a single narrow SCSI bus (8-bit) or up to 15 devices (plus the adapter, for a total of 16) on a wide (16-bit) SCSI bus. Now, dual-processor, 16-bit host adapters are available that can operate up to 30 devices plus the host adapter. In every case, each device must have a unique SCSI ID address. The host adapter takes one address, so the rest are free for up to 7 SCSI peripherals (or more as defined by the host adapter). Most SCSI host adapters are factory-set to ID 7

or 15, which is the highest priority ID. All other devices must have unique IDs that do not conflict with one another. Some host adapters boot only from a hard disk set to a specific ID. Older Adaptec host adapters required the boot hard disk to be ID 0; newer ones can boot from any ID. A SCSI device containing multiple drives (such as a CD-ROM tower or changer) will have a single ID, but each physical drive or logical drive will also be known by a logical unit number (LUN). For example, a 5-CD changer is SCSI ID #3. Each “virtual drive” or disc position within SCSI ID #3 has a LUN of 0–4. So the last “drive” has drive letter J and is also identified by Windows as SCSI ID#3, LUN 4.

Setting the SCSI ID

The methods for setting the SCSI ID vary with the device. For internal drives, the settings are made with jumper blocks. Use Table 4.16 to set the jumpers. Note that the column to the left is the lowest numbered ID jumper, which may be identified as A0 or SCSI ID0, depending on the drive vendor.

Table 4.16 SCSI ID Jumper Settings

SCSI ID#	ID A0	Jumper A1	Settings A2	A3	(WD and Quantum Markings)
	ID0	ID1	ID2	ID3	(Seagate Markings)
00	0	0	0	0	
01	1	0	0	0	
02	0	1	0	0	
03	1	1	0	0	
04	0	0	1	0	
05	1	0	1	0	
06	0	1	1	0	
07	1	1	1	0	
08	0	0	0	1	
09	1	0	0	1	
10	0	1	0	1	
11	1	1	0	1	
12	0	0	1	1	
13	1	0	1	1	
14	0	1	1	1	
15	1	1	1	1	

1 = Jumper On, 0 = Jumper Off

SCAM—Automatic ID Setting

Some SCSI hard drives and host adapters support SCAM (SCSI Configure AutoMagically), which automatically assigns the drive a unique SCSI ID number. To use SCAM, both the host adapter and drive must support SCAM, and SCAM must be enabled (usually by a jumper on the drive).

SCSI ID Setting for External Devices

SCSI drives and devices can be used both internally and externally, often with the same interface card. For external devices, one of the following methods will apply for each device in the SCSI daisy-chain. Use Table 4.14 as a general reference. Typically, the ID setting control is at the back of the device, near the SCSI interface cable. Depending on the device, the device ID can be set by a rotary dial, a push-button control, or a sliding switch. Not all SCSI ID numbers are available with every device; many low-cost devices allow a choice of only two or three numbers. Regardless of the setting method, each internal and external device on a single SCSI daisy-chain of devices must have a unique ID! If you use Adaptec SCSI interface cards, use the SCSI Interrogator program before you add a new SCSI device to determine which device IDs you have remaining. If you are adding a new SCSI device with limited ID choices (such as the Iomega Zip 100 SCSI drive), you might need to move an existing device to another ID to make room for the new device.

For high-performance SCSI cards that offer multiple buses, you should be able to reuse device numbers 0–7 for each separate bus on the card. If you have problems with duplicate ID numbers on various buses, the device drivers for either the device or the interface card might not be up-to-date. Contact the device and card maker for assistance.

SCSI Termination

SCSI termination is simple. Termination is required at both ends of the bus; there are no exceptions. If the host adapter is at one end of the bus, it must have termination enabled. On the other hand, if the host adapter is in the middle of the bus—and if both internal and external bus links are present—the host adapter must have its termination disabled, and the devices at each end of the bus must have terminators installed. Unfortunately, the majority of problems that I see with SCSI installations are the result of improper termination.

Terminators can be external or internal (set with a jumper block or with switches or sliders). Some devices also terminate themselves automatically.

The pass-through models are required when a device is at the end of the bus and only one SCSI connector is available.

SCSI Configuration Troubleshooting

When you are installing a chain of devices on a single SCSI bus, the installation can get complicated very quickly. Here are some tips for getting your setup to function quickly and efficiently:

- **Start by adding one device at a time**—Rather than plugging numerous peripherals into a single SCSI card and then trying to configure them at the same time, start by installing the host adapter and a single hard disk. Then, you can continue installing devices one at a time, checking to make sure that everything works before moving on.
- **Keep good documentation**—When you add a SCSI peripheral, write down the SCSI ID address and any other switch and jumper settings, such as SCSI Parity, Terminator Power, and Delayed or Remote Start. For the host adapter, record the BIOS addresses, IRQ, DMA channel, and I/O Port addresses used by the adapter, and any other jumper or configuration settings (such as termination) that might be important to know later.
- **Use proper termination**—Each end of the bus must be terminated, preferably with active or Forced Perfect (FPT) terminators. If you are using any Fast SCSI-2 device, you must use active terminators rather than the cheaper, passive types. Even with standard (slow) SCSI devices, active termination is highly recommended. If you have only internal or external devices on the bus, the host adapter and last device on the chain should be terminated. If you have external and internal devices on the chain, you generally will terminate the first and last of these devices but not the SCSI host adapter (which is in the middle of the bus).
- **Use high-quality shielded SCSI cables**—Make sure that your cable connectors match your devices. Use high-quality shielded cables and observe the SCSI bus-length limitations. Use cables designed for SCSI use and, if possible, stick to the same brand of cable throughout a single SCSI bus. Various brands of cables have different impedance values, which sometimes causes problems, especially in long or high-speed SCSI implementations.
- **Have the correct driver for your SCSI host adapter and for each device**—SCSI, unlike IDE, is not controlled by your computer's motherboard BIOS, but by software drivers. A SCSI device cannot be used unless the appropriate software drivers are installed for it. As with any other software-driven peripheral, these drivers are often updated periodically. Check for improved drivers and install them as needed.

Following these tips will help minimize problems and leave you with a trouble-free SCSI installation.

Use Table 4.17 to help you record SCSI information. Table 4.18 shows a form I use to record data about my system. You can attach this information to the System Template referred to in Chapter 2, "System Components and Configuration."

Table 4.17 SCSI Device Data Sheet

Interface Card	IRQ	DMA	I/O Port Address	Slot Type
Interface card Notes and details				
Device information				
Include SCSI interface card and all devices below				
Device ID Y/N	Device Name	Internal or External	Cable/ Connector Type	Terminated?
0				
1				
2				
3				
4				
5				
6				
7				
8				
9				
10				
11				
12				
13				
14				
15				

Table 4.18 Completed SCSI Device Data Sheet

Interface Card	IRQ	DMA	I/O Port Address	Slot Type
Adaptec AHA-1535	10	5	0130h–0133h	ISA
Interface Card Notes and Details	Bus-mastering card with internal and external cable connectors; allows pass-through so that both connectors can be used at once			

Device Information

Include SCSI interface card and all devices

Device ID Y/N	Device Name	Internal or External	Cable/ Connector Type	Terminated?
0				
1				
2	Epson Expression 636 flatbed scanner with transparency adapter	External	50-pin Centronics	No
3	Polaroid SprintScan 35Plus slide and filmstrip scanner	External	50-pin Centronics and DB-25 25-pin	Yes
4	Philips CDD2600 CD-Recorder (CD-R)	Internal	50-pin ribbon cable	Yes
5				
6	Iomega Zip 100 Zip drive	External	DB-25 25-pin	No
7	Adaptec AHA-1535 SCSI host adapter card	Internal	50-pin ribbon (internal) 50-pin high-density (external)	No
8–15	(No devices)			

Note that both ends of the daisy-chain are terminated and that the actual end of the internal daisy-chain is *not* the AHA-1535 SCSI host adapter, but the Philips CDD2600 drive. Also note that some SCSI devices support different types of cables.

Use the worksheet shown in Figure 4.12 to help you plan your SCSI cabling and physical layout. Start with the host adapter card. Figure 4.13 shows a completed worksheet.

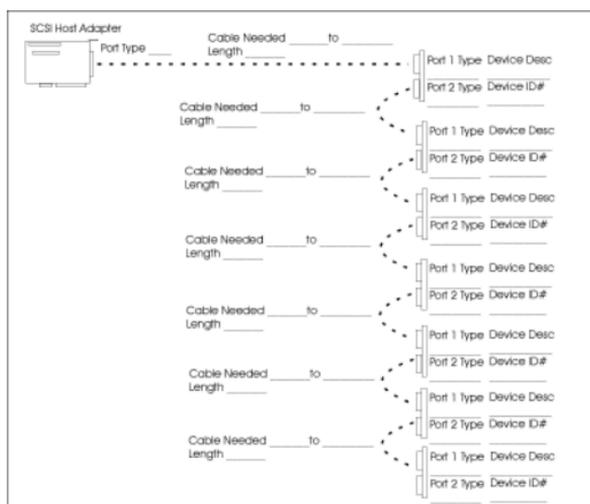


Figure 4.12 SCSI Cabling Worksheet (blank). See Figure 4.13 for a completed example. Use data recorded on the SCSI Device Data Sheet shown in Table 4.18.

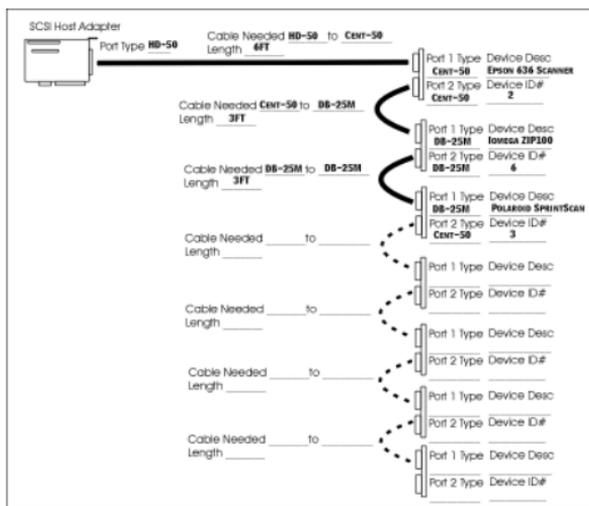


Figure 4.13 SCSI Cabling Worksheet (completed). This uses data from the completed SCSI Device Data Sheet from Table 4.18.

Hard Disk Preparation

The formatting process for a hard disk drive subsystem has three major steps:

1. Low-level formatting
2. Partitioning
3. High-level formatting

Table 4.19 outlines the steps for preparing a drive for use after installation.

Table 4.19 Comparing the Steps in the Formatting Process		
Process Step	When Necessary	How Performed
Low-level formatting (LLF)	<p>IDE and SCSI hard drives are low-level formatted at the factory; reformat only to correct errors.</p> <p>With SCSI only, to configure drive for use with a specified host adapter and its driver software. This is usually required for Windows 3.x/MS-DOS systems, but not for Windows 9x systems.</p>	<p>Use factory-supplied LLF or diagnostic utilities; use Ontrack Disk Manager (generic or OEM version); use MicroScope version 7 software for IDE. For SCSI, use the host adapter's BIOS or software routines (such as Adaptec's EZ-SCSI) if necessary.</p>
Partitioning	<p>Always required for both SCSI and IDE hard drives; indicates which portion of the drive will be used for each operating system and how the drive letters will be defined.</p>	<p>Use operating system utility (FDISK or equivalent) if BIOS provides full support for drive capacity; EZ-Drive, Disk Manager, and similar products can be used for both FDISK and FORMAT options.</p> <p>With SCSI drives under Windows 3.x/MS-DOS, host-adapter-specific partitioning and formatting routines are normally used.</p>
High-level formatting	<p>Always required for all drive letters defined by FDISK or partitioning utility.</p>	<p>Use operating system utility (FORMAT or equivalent); EZ-Drive, Disk Manager, and similar products can be used for both FDISK and FORMAT options.</p> <p>With SCSI drives under Windows 3.x/MS-DOS, host-adapter-specific partitioning and formatting routines are normally used.</p>

Using FDISK

FDISK is the partitioning utility used with MS-DOS, Windows 95, and above and has equivalents in all other operating systems. In most cases with SCSI and all cases with IDE drives, it's the first software program you run after you physically install a hard disk and properly detect it in the BIOS.

FDISK is used to set aside disk space (or an entire physical drive) for use by an operating system, and to specify how many and what size the logical drives will be within that space. By default, the MS-DOS and Windows 9x versions of FDISK prepares a single physical drive as a single drive letter (up to the limits listed), but FDISK can also be used to create multiple drives. By not preparing all of a hard disk's capacity with FDISK, you can use the remaining room on the hard disk for another operating system.

Drive-Letter Size Limits

We've already considered the physical drive size limits caused by BIOS limitations and how to overcome them. Those limits define the maximum size a *physical* hard drive can be. However, depending on the version of Windows in use (and with any version of MS-DOS), it might be necessary to subdivide a hard drive through the use of FDISK to allow its full capacity to be used through the creation of multiple logical drive letters.

The original release of Windows 95 and all versions of MS-DOS from DOS 3.3x support FAT16, which allows no more than 65,536 files per drive and a single drive letter no more than 2.1GB in size. Thus, a 6GB hard disk prepared with MS-DOS or the original Windows 95 must have at a minimum three drive letters and could have more (see Figure 4.14). The primary disk partition (C: on a single drive system) can be bootable and contains only a single drive letter. An extended partition, which cannot be bootable, contains the remainder of the drive letters (called *logical DOS drives* in most versions of FDISK).

Large Hard Disk Support

If you use the Windows 95B or above (Win95 OSR 2.x), Windows 98, or Windows Me versions of FDISK with a hard drive greater than 512MB, FDISK offers to enable large hard disk support.

Choosing to enable large hard disk support provides several benefits:

- You can use a large hard disk (greater than 2.1GB) as a single drive letter; in fact, your drive can be as large as 2TB and still be identified by a single drive letter. This is because of the FAT-32 file system, which allows for many more files per drive than FAT-16.

- Because of the more efficient storage methods of FAT-32, your files will use less hard disk space. FAT-32 is not supported by Windows NT 4.0 or earlier, but is supported by Windows 2000.
- Note that a FAT-32 drive cannot be directly accessed by older versions (pre-OSR 2.x) of Windows 95, Windows 3.1x/MS-DOS, or any other operating system. If you occasionally need to run older applications that cannot run under Windows 95B or Windows 98 and you want to store those applications on a hard drive, be sure you create a hard drive letter that uses FAT-16. This way you can boot your older operating system and still access your program files. You can, of course, access data on a FAT-32 drive over a network with any computer using a compatible network protocol.

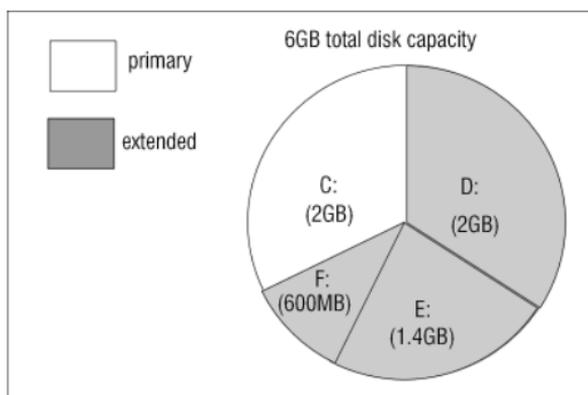


Figure 4.14 Adding a hard drive above 2.1GB in size to an MS-DOS or original Windows 95 computer forces the user to create multiple drive letters to use the entire drive capacity. The logical DOS drives are referenced like any other drive, although they are portions of a single physical hard disk.

Benefits of Hard Disk Partitioning

Even though it might seem like a lot of trouble to partition a single physical hard disk into multiple drive letters, especially with FAT-32, several good reasons exist for both FAT-16 and FAT-32 users to partition their hard disks:

- **Multiple partitions can be used to separate the operating system, application programs, and data for easier backup and greater security**—This method for dividing a hard disk into C: (Windows and drivers), D: (applications), and E: (data) is recommended by PowerQuest

(makers of the popular PartitionMagic disk utility), and I've followed their advice for some time. Some time ago, I lost both C: and D: drives to a completely unexpected disk crash, but my data, on E:, stayed safe!

- **For FAT-16 operating systems in particular (MS-DOS, Windows 95/95a, and others using FAT-16), partitioning the drive results in significantly less disk space wasted**—Because files are actually stored in clusters (or allocation units) that are multiples of the 512-byte disk sector, a small file must occupy an entire cluster. As Table 4.20 indicates, the bigger the drive, the greater the space wasted.

Table 4.20 FAT-16 Cluster Sizes

Drive Size (Defined by FDISK) Binary MB/GB	Drive Size (Defined by Drive Maker) Decimal MB/GB	Cluster Size in Binary KB	Cluster Size in Bytes
0–127MB ¹	0–133MB ¹	2KB	2,048
128–255MB	134–267MB	4KB	4,096
256–511MB	268–537MB	8KB	8,192
512MB–1023MB	538MB–1073MB	16KB	16,384
1024MB (1GB)– 2048MB (2GB)	1074MB–2113MB	32KB	32,768

1. If you create a partition under 15MB (binary) in size, the operating system actually uses the old FAT-12 file system, which results in a cluster size of 8KB!

FAT-32 Versus FAT-16 Cluster Sizes

FAT-32 is far more efficient than FAT-16 and is used by virtually every recent system with a pre-installed copy of Windows 95 OSR 2.x (95B/95C), Windows 98, or Windows Me. If you are installing an additional hard disk on a system that uses these operating systems, use Table 4.21 to determine the relative efficiencies of FAT-16 versus FAT-32 because you can choose either FAT type for the entire new drive or any partitions on it. This chart uses binary (FDISK/BIOS) sizes only.

Table 4.21 FAT-16 Versus FAT-32

Cluster Size	FAT-16 Partition Size	FAT-32 Partition Size
4KB	128MB–255MB	260MB–8GB
8KB	256MB–511MB	8GB–16GB
16KB	512MB–1024MB	16GB–32GB
32KB	1025MB–2048MB	32GB–2TB

Converting FAT-16 Partition to FAT-32

If your existing hard disk uses FAT-16, you can convert any partition on it to FAT-32 *if* one of the following is true:

- You have Windows 95B or above (OSR 2.x) and PowerQuest's PartitionMagic v3.x or newer. PartitionMagic has a FAT-16-to-FAT-32 converter, which can also reverse the process (FAT-32 to FAT-16).
- You have Windows 98. Windows 98 comes with its own FAT-16-to-FAT-32 converter, and it can also use PartitionMagic version 4.x or newer.

NTFS Considerations and Default Cluster Sizes

New Technology File System (NTFS) is the high-performance file system that can be used on Windows NT and Windows 2000 systems. It has much more efficient storage by default than FAT-16, but it can't be directly accessed by other versions of Windows or MS-DOS. NTFS in Windows 2000 also supports encryption and the merging of several physical drives into a single logical folder.

Use the following guidelines when considering the use of NTFS:

- Windows 2000 can install a drive of any size recognized by the BIOS as a single NTFS volume up to the limits of the BIOS.
- Windows NT 4.0 must partition a drive of over 4GB into at least two drive letters because its boot drive cannot exceed 4GB.
- Windows 2000 can be used in a dual-boot environment with Windows 98, but if it is installed on the same hard drive partition as Windows 98, NTFS cannot be used.
- NTFS drives require special disk utility programs for defragmentation and disk maintenance because their internal structure is different from FAT-16 and FAT-32 drives.

The default cluster sizes for NTFS in Windows 3.51 and above (including Windows NT 4.0 and Windows 2000) are listed in Table 4.22.

Table 4.22 Default NTFS Cluster Sizes

Drive Size	NTFS Cluster Size
512MB or less	512 bytes
513MB–1024MB(1GB)	1024 bytes (1KB)
1025MB–2048MB(2GB)	2048 bytes (2KB)
2049MB and larger	4096 bytes (4KB)

Note that NTFS drives can be larger than FAT-16 drives and are even more efficient than FAT-32 drives.

The default cluster sizes for FAT-16 drives under Windows NT 4.0 and Windows 2000 are the same as for Windows 9x and MS-DOS. In addition, three more large drive sizes are supported by Windows NT 4.0 only (see Table 4.23).

Table 4.23 Additional FAT-16 Cluster Sizes Supported by Windows NT 4.0

Drive Capacity	Size of FAT (Using FAT-16)
2048–4096MB (2–4GB)	64KB
4096–8192MB (4–8GB)	128KB
8192–16384MB (8–16GB)	256KB

How FDISK and the Operating System Create and Allocate Drive Letters

Two types of partitions can be created with the FDISK in Windows 9x/Me/2000/NT and MS-DOS: *primary* and *extended*. The primary partition can be bootable and can occupy all, part, or none of a hard disk's capacity. If you have only one hard disk in a system and it's bootable, at least a portion of that drive's partition is primary.

An extended partition is similar to a "pocket" that holds one or more logical DOS drives inside it. Table 4.24 shows how FDISK identifies these various disk structures as they might be found in a typical 13GB hard disk divided into three drives—C:, D:, and E:.

Table 4.24 FDISK Primary, Extended, and Logical DOS Drives Compared (13GB Hard Disk)

Partition Type	Size	Contained Within	Bootable?	% of Total Disk Space	% of Partition
Primary	4GB	n/a	Yes	32.5%	
Drive C:	4GB	Primary	Yes	32.5%	100% of primary
Extended	9GB	n/a	No	67.5%	
Logical DOS drive D: partition	4GB	Extended	No	32.5%	44.4% of extended
Logical DOS drive E: partition	5GB	Extended	No	35.0%	55.6% of extended

With FDISK, the partitions shown earlier must be created in the following order:

1. Create the primary partition to occupy less than 100% of disk space at the size you choose up to any limits imposed by your operating system.
2. Create an extended partition to use the *remainder* of disk space unused by the primary partition.
3. Create one or more logical DOS drives to occupy the extended partition.
4. Before leaving FDISK, make the primary partition (C:) active to enable it to boot.

Assigning Drive Letters with FDISK

You can use FDISK in many ways, depending on the number of hard drives you have in your system and the number of drive letters you want to create.

With a single drive, creating a primary partition (C:) and an extended partition with two logical DOS drives within it will result in the following drives, as you saw earlier:

<i>Partition Type</i>	<i>Contains Drive Letter(s)</i>
Primary	C:
Extended	D: and E:

A second drive added to this system should have drive letters that follow the E: drive.

However, you must understand how drive letters are allocated by the system to know how to use FDISK correctly in this situation. Table 4.25 shows how FDISK assigns drive letters by drive and partition type.

Drive	Partition	Order	First Drive Letter
1st	Primary	1st	C:
2nd	Primary	2nd	D:
1st	Extended	3rd	E:
2nd	Extended	4th	F: or higher

How does this affect you when you add another hard drive? If you prepare the second hard drive with a primary partition and your

first hard drive has an extended partition on it, the second hard drive will take the primary partition's D: drive letter. This moves all the drive letters in the first hard drive's extended partition up at least one drive letter.

This example lists a drive with C:, D:, and E: as the drive letters (D: and E: were in the extended partition). Table 4.26 indicates what happens if a second drive is added with a primary partition on it.

Table 4.26 Drive Letter Changes Caused by Addition of Second Drive with Primary Partition

Drive	Partition Type	Order	Original Drive Letter(s) (First Drive Only)	New Drive Letter(s) After Adding Second Drive
1st	Primary	1st	C:	C:
2nd	Primary	2nd	—	D:
1st	Extended	3rd	D:, E:	E:, F:

This principle extends to third and fourth physical drives as well: The primary partitions on each drive get their drive letters first, followed by logical DOS drives in the extended partitions.

How can you avoid the problem of changing drive letters? If you're installing an additional hard drive (not a replacement), remember that it can't be a bootable drive. If it can't be bootable, there's no reason to make it a primary partition. FDISK will enable you to create an extended partition using 100% of the space on any drive.

Table 4.27 shows the same example used in Table 4.25 with the second drive installed as an extended partition.

Table 4.27 Drive Letter Allocations After the Addition of a Second Drive with an Extended Partition Only

Drive	Partition Type	Order	Original Drive Letter(s) (First Drive Only)	New Drive Letter(s) After Adding Second Drive
1st	Primary	1st	C:	C:
1st	Extended	2nd	D:, E:	D:, E:
2nd	Extended	3rd	—	F:

This operating system behavior also explains why some of the first computers with IDE-based (ATAPI) Iomega Zip drives identified the Zip drive as D:, with a single 2.5GB or larger hard disk identified as C: and E:—the Zip drive was treated as the second hard drive with a primary partition.

High-Level (DOS) Format

The final step in the installation of a hard disk drive is the high-level format. Similar to the partitioning process, the high-level format is specific to the file system you've chosen to use on the drive. On Windows 9x/Me/NT/2000 and DOS systems, the primary function of the high-level format is to create a FAT and directory system on the disk so the operating system can manage files. You must run FDISK before formatting a drive. Each drive letter created by FDISK must be formatted before it can be used for data storage. This process might be automated with setup programs for some operating systems, such as Windows 9x retail versions. In the following notes, I provide the steps for a manual drive preparation in which you'll install a full operating system copy later.

Usually, you perform the high-level format with the FORMAT.COM program or the formatting utility in Windows 9x/Me Explorer. FORMAT.COM uses the following syntax:

```
FORMAT C: /S /V
```

This high-level command formats drive C:, writes the hidden operating system files in the first part of the partition (/s), and prompts for the entry of a volume label (/v) to be stored on the disk at the completion of the process.

The FAT high-level format program performs the following functions and procedures:

1. Scans the disk (read only) for tracks and sectors marked as bad during the LLF and notes these tracks as being unreadable.
2. Returns the drive heads to the first cylinder of the partition and at that cylinder (Head 1, Sector 1), it writes a DOS volume boot sector.
3. Writes a FAT at Head 1, Sector 2. Immediately after this FAT, it writes a second copy of the FAT. These FATs essentially are blank except for bad-cluster marks noting areas of the disk that were found to be unreadable during the marked-defect scan.
4. Writes a blank root directory.
5. If the /s parameter is specified, copies the system files, IO.SYS and MSDOS.SYS (or IBMBIO.COM and IBMDOS.COM, depending on which DOS you run) and COMMAND.COM to the disk (in that order).
6. If the /v parameter is specified, prompts the user for a volume label, which is written as the fourth file entry in the root directory.

Now, the operating system can use the disk for storing and retrieving files, and the disk is a bootable disk.

Note

Because the high-level format doesn't overwrite data areas beyond the root directory of the hard disk, using programs such as Norton Utilities to unformat the hard disk that contains data from previous operations is possible—provided no programs or data has been copied to the drive after high-level formatting. Unformatting can be performed because the data from the drive's previous use is still present.

If you create an extended partition, the logical DOS drive letters located in the extended partition need a simpler FORMAT command because system files aren't necessary—for example, FORMAT D:/V for drive D: and FORMAT E:/V for drive E:, and so on.

Replacing an Existing Drive

Previous sections discuss installing a single hard drive or adding a new hard drive to a system. Although formatting and partitioning a new hard disk can be challenging, replacing an existing drive and moving your programs and files to it can be much more challenging.

Drive Migration for MS-DOS Users

When MS-DOS 6.x was dominant, many users used the following straightforward method to transfer the contents of their old hard drive to their new hard drive:

1. The user creates a bootable disk containing FDISK, FORMAT, and XCOPY.
2. The new hard drive is prepared with a primary partition (and possibly an extended partition, depending on the user's desires).
3. The new hard drive is formatted with system files, although the operating system identifies it as D:.
4. The XCOPY command is used to transfer all non-hidden files from C:\ (the old hard drive) to D:\, as in the following:

```
XCOPY C:\ D:\/S/E
```

The XCOPY command also is used as necessary to transfer files from any remaining drive letters on the old hard drive to the corresponding drive letters on the new drive.

Because the only hidden files such a system would have were probably the operating system boot files (already installed) and the Windows 3.1 permanent swap file (which could be re-created after restarting Windows), this “free” data transfer routine worked well for many people.

After the original drive was removed from the system, the new drive would be jumpered as master and assigned C:. You would need to run FDISK from a floppy and set the primary partition on the new C: drive as Active. Then, exit FDISK and the drive would boot.

Drive Migration for Windows 9x/Me Users

Windows 9x and Me have complicated the once simple act of data transfer to a new system by their frequent use of hidden files and folders (such as \Windows\Inf, where Windows hardware drivers are stored). The extensive use of hidden files was a major reason for a greatly enhanced version of XCOPY, known as XCOPY32, to be included in Windows 9x and Me.

Note

XCOPY32 is automatically used in place of XCOPY when XCOPY is started within a DOS session under Windows. XCOPY32, as the name implies, must be run within Windows.

XCOPY32 for Windows 9x Data Transfer

Compared to the classic XCOPY, XCOPY32 can copy hidden files; preserve file attributes such as system, hidden, read-only, and archive; automatically create folders; and is compatible with long filenames. Thus, using it to duplicate an existing drive is possible, but with these cautions:

- The XCOPY32 command is much more complex.
- Errors might occur during the copy process because of Windows' use of temporary files during normal operation, but XCOPY32 can be forced to continue.

This command line calls XCOPY32 and transfers all files and folders with their original attributes intact from the original drive (C:) to the new drive (D:). *This command must be run from an MS-DOS session under Windows 9x or Me:*

```
xcopy32 c:\. d:\s/c/h/e/r/k
```

The command switches are explained here:

- **/S**—Copies folders beneath the starting folder.
- **/C**—Continues to copy after errors. (The Windows swap file can't be copied due to being in use.)
- **/H**—Copies hidden and system files.
- **/E**—Copies folders, even if empty.
- **/R**—Overwrites read-only files.
- **/K**—Preserves file attributes.

Repeat the command with appropriate drive-letter changes for any additional drive letters on your old drive.

After the original drive is removed from the system, the new drive needs to be jumpered as master (or single); the operating system will assign it C:. You also must run FDISK from a floppy and set the primary partition on the new C: drive as Active. Then, exit FDISK, and the drive will boot.

This process can take a long time because of the overhead of running an MS-DOS session beneath Windows.

If your hard disk comes with a disk preparation utility, such as EZ-Drive, Data Lifeguard Tools, MAXBlast, Disk Manager, Disc Wizard, or others, it might include a fast data transfer utility you can use in place of this procedure. I also recommend the PowerQuest utility DriveCopy, which uses a special method called SmartSector copying to copy hundreds of megabytes of data from the old drive to the new drive in just a few minutes.

Note

If your hard drive was original equipment in your computer, or if you purchased a replacement from bulk stock, you might not have received the appropriate installation disk for your drive. Check the drive maker's Web site for a downloadable version.

Hard Disk Drive Troubleshooting and Repair

Hard disk problems fall into two categories: hard and soft. *Hard* problems are triggered by mechanical problems that cause the drive to emit strange grinding or knocking noises (or no noise at all!), whereas *soft* problems are read and write errors that occur in a drive

that sounds normal. Before deciding a hard disk is defective, test it on another known-working system. If the problem goes away on another system, the drive is not the problem (see Table 4.28).

Note

Before using this table, verify that your drive’s BIOS configuration is correct. If your system’s LBA or other drive translation settings are disabled and your drive needs them, it will appear to hang.

Table 4.28 Hard and Soft Problems and Solutions

Symptom	Cause	Solution
Drive makes banging noise on initial power up; can’t boot without restarting the computer a couple of times; usually found on very old (under 100MB) RLL or MFM hard disks only; these drives use two (20-pin and 34-pin) data and signal cables.	<i>Stiction</i> (Static friction) is causing the heads to stick to the media because of an aging mechanism and lubrication problems internally.	If drive hangs, try tapping gently on one corner to free the heads or mount the drive upside down. Back up data and replace drive as soon as possible.
Drive makes scratching or “boinging” noise internally; won’t boot.	Severe head damage, probably caused by impact (fall or drop).	Replace drive.
Drive spins normally but can’t be recognized.	If cable and jumpering okay, probably failed logic board.	Replace logic board or replace drive.
Drive has repetitive errors detected by SCANDISK or other disk testing utility.	If system rebooted or was turned off without proper shutdown, these are temporary files that weren’t closed. This does not indicate a hardware problem. If normal shutdown procedure followed, might indicate marginal disk surface.	Remind user to shut down computer normally. If normal shutdown procedure was followed, get manufacturer utility to detect and remap sectors and retest drive frequently. If drive doesn’t improve, replace as soon as possible.

If replacing the logic assembly does not solve the problem, contact the manufacturer or a specialized repair shop that has clean-room facilities for hard disk repair.

Optical Drive Interface Types

Most internal CD-ROM, CD-R, and CD-RW drives are ATAPI-based (ATAPI uses the standard IDE interface). Some high-performance drives in either internal or external form factors are SCSI-based. Physical installation and cabling is the same as for any other IDE (ATAPI) or SCSI device, as seen earlier in this chapter.

Some external drives use parallel-port or USB port connectors. See Chapter 7, “Parallel Ports, Printers, Scanners, and Drives,” and Chapter 8, “USB and IEEE-1394 Ports and Devices,” for troubleshooting and configuration tips for drives using these interface types.

MS-DOS Command-Line Access to CD-ROM Drives for Reloading Windows

CD-ROM drives are normally controlled in Windows 9x and Me by 32-bit drivers, but these drivers *will not work* if the operating system becomes corrupted or if Windows will only work in Safe mode. In those cases, having access to the CD-ROM drive becomes critical to enable you to reload the operating system.

In Windows 98 and Me, the Emergency Disk you can create during initial installation or later contains drivers that work for most IDE/ATAPI and SCSI-based CD-ROM drives. In addition, the disk will try each driver until it finds one that works.

In Windows 95, the Emergency Disk does *not* contain drivers for the CD-ROM. Follow these general guidelines to create a working boot disk with CD-ROM support. This same process will work for MS-DOS/Windows 3.1 users.

The following instructions are for IDE (ATAPI) CD-ROM drives. SCSI-based, CD-ROM drives will also require SCSI device drivers for the host adapter and devices attached:

1. Create the Windows 95 Emergency Disk (it's bootable) from the Control Panel's Add/Remove Programs icon—Windows Setup tab. This process destroys all previous contents on the disk.
2. Copy the following files to your bootable disk in the A: drive:
 - **MYCDROM.SYS**—Use the actual driver name for your CD-ROM drive and copy it from the file's actual location. If you don't have an MS-DOS driver, you can download one from the drive's manufacturer, or download an ATAPI driver called AOATAPI.SYS available from several Web sites.

- **MSCDEX.EXE**—Copy from C:\WINDOWS\COMMAND or your CD-ROM drive's folder; the same file for any CD-ROM drive.

Next, you'll need to create a CONFIG.SYS file that will load the CD-ROM device driver and an AUTOEXEC.BAT that will load the MSCDEX.EXE CD-ROM extensions for MS-DOS program. Use a text editor, such as the Windows Notepad.

Contents of CONFIG.SYS:

- DEVICE=MYCDROM.SYS /D:miscd001
- Lastdrive=M

Contents of AUTOEXEC.BAT:

- MSCDEX.EXE /d:miscd001 /m:10 /L:M

Note

Note that the /d: switch refers to the same device name, which could be Charlie or Kumquat or anything that matches! A mismatch will cause the loading process to fail.

Check your computer's BIOS setup and verify that the floppy drive is the first bootable device. Then, restart the computer with this floppy in drive A: and you should see the CD-ROM driver initialize. Next, MSCDEX should assign the CD-ROM the drive letter listed after the /L: option (M:).

If you don't have a suitable Windows 95 disk with CD-ROM support, a popular workaround is to use a Windows 98 or Windows Me startup disk because they both contain the CD-ROM drivers you need to access your CD for reinstallation of files or the entire operating system.

Troubleshooting Optical Drives

Failure Reading a CD

If your CD-ROM drive fails to read a CD, try the following solutions:

- Check for scratches on the CD's data surface.
- Check the drive for dust and dirt; use a cleaning CD.

- Make sure the drive shows up as a working device in System Properties.
- Try a CD that you know works.
- Restart the computer (the magic cure-all).
- Remove the drive from the Device Manager in Windows 9x, allow the system to redetect the drive, and reinstall drivers (if PnP-based system).

Failure Reading CD-R and CD-RW Disks in a CD-ROM or DVD Drive

If your CD-ROM or DVD drive fails to read CD-R and CD-RW disks, try the following solutions:

- Check compatibility; some very old 1x CD-ROM drives can't read CD-R media. Replace the drive with a newer, faster, cheaper model.
- Many early-model DVD drives can't read CD-R and CD-RW media; check compatibility.
- CD-ROM drive must be multi-read compatible to read CD-RW because of lower reflectivity of media; replace drive.
- If some CD-Rs but not others can be read, check media color combination to see whether some color combinations work better than others; change brand of media.
- Packet-written CD-Rs (from Adaptec DirectCD and backup programs) can't be read on MS-DOS/Windows 3.1 CD-ROM drives because of limitations of the operating system.

IDE/ATAPI CD-ROM Drive Runs Slowly

If your IDE/ATAPI CD-ROM drive performs poorly, check the following items:

- Check the cache size in the Performance tab of the System Properties Control Panel. Select the quad-speed setting (largest cache size).
- Check to see whether the CD-ROM drive is set as the slave to your hard disk; move the CD-ROM to the secondary controller if possible.
- Your PIO or UDMA mode might not be set correctly for your drive in the BIOS; check the drive specs and use autodetect in BIOS for best results.

- Check to see that you are using bus-mastering drivers on compatible systems; install the appropriate drivers for the motherboard's chipset and operating system in use.
- Check to see whether you are using the CD-ROM interface on your sound card instead of an IDE connection on the motherboard. Move the drive connection to the IDE interface on the motherboard and disable the sound card IDE, if possible, to free up IRQ and I/O port address ranges.
- Open the System Properties Control Panel and select the Performance tab to see whether the system is using MS-DOS Compatibility mode for the CD-ROM drive. If all the IDE drives are running in this mode, see www.microsoft.com and query on "MS-DOS Compatibility Mode" for a troubleshooter. If only the CD-ROM drive is in this mode, see whether you're using CD-ROM drivers in CONFIG.SYS and AUTOEXEC.BAT. Remove the lines containing references to the CD-ROM drivers (don't actually delete the lines—REM them), reboot the system, and verify that your CD-ROM drive still works and that it's running in 32-bit mode. Some older drives require at least the CONFIG.SYS driver to operate.

Trouble Using Bootable CDs

Bootable CDs are terrific vehicles for installing a standard software image on a series of computers, or as a "bulletproof" method of running antivirus software, but they can be tricky to use.

If you are having problems using a bootable CD, try these possible solutions:

- Check the contents of bootable floppy disk from which you copied the boot image during the creation of the bootable CD. To access entire contents of a CD-R, a bootable disk must contain CD-ROM drivers, AUTOEXEC.BAT, and CONFIG.SYS. Test the bootable disk by starting the system with it and seeing whether you can access the CD-ROM drive afterward.
- Use ISO 9660 format. Don't use the Joliet format because it is for long-filename CDs and can't boot.
- Check your system's BIOS for boot compliance and boot order; CD-ROM should be listed first.
- Check the drive for boot compliance.
- SCSI CD-ROMs need a SCSI card with BIOS and bootable capability, as well as special motherboard BIOS settings.

- You must use your mastering software's Bootable CD option to create the bootable CD-ROM from the files on the bootable floppy. The bootable disk's AUTOEXEC.BAT, CONFIG.SYS, and basic boot files are stored on a bootable CD as files called BOOTIMG.BIN and BOOTCAT.BIN by the mastering software's Bootable CD mastering option.

Chapter 5

Floppy, Removable, Tape, and Flash Memory Storage

Floppy Drives

A 3 1/2-inch 1.44MB floppy drive, the most common type of floppy drive in use today, isn't very expensive to replace. However, when it stops working, you might *not* need to replace it right away, if you have the "inside story." Figure 5.1 shows an exploded view of a typical 3 1/2-inch 1.44MB floppy drive.

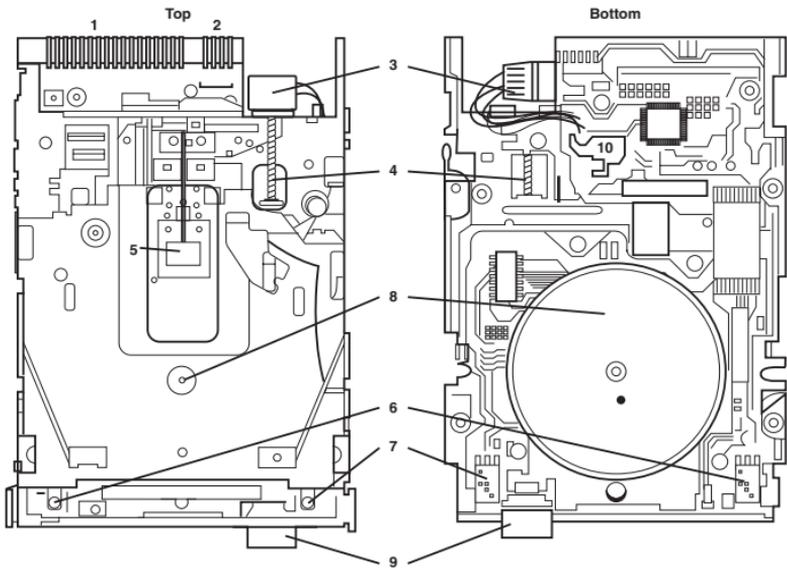


Figure 5.1 A typical 3 1/2-inch floppy disk drive.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. 34-pin data cable connector | 6. Write-protect sensor |
| 2. 4-pin power connector | 7. Media sensor (720KB or 1.44MB) |
| 3. Head-actuator motor | 8. Spindle (left) and drive motor (right) |
| 4. Worm gear to drive actuator motor | 9. Disk ejector button |
| 5. Read-write head (one of two) | 10. Logic board |

Where Floppy Drives Fail—and Simple Fixes

I spent several years on the road carrying around disassembled PCs for use in computer-troubleshooting classes. Typically, I had more floppy-drive failures than about anything else, due to the combination of inexperienced students, rough handling by airline baggage carousels, and the simple fact that a floppy drive is designed to be used within the confines of a computer case. I learned how to fix drives the hard way—when the only spare I had wasn't working, either.

The Drive Cover

The drive cover acts as a dust cover, which is obviously a good idea for a drive that uses exposed, relatively soft flexible magnetic media. However, a damaged or bent drive cover can bind the disk ejector, preventing it from moving. The drive cover can easily be removed and bent back into shape.

The Stepper Motor

The stepper motor moves the head actuator across the surface of the floppy disk media, reading or writing data (see Figure 5.2).

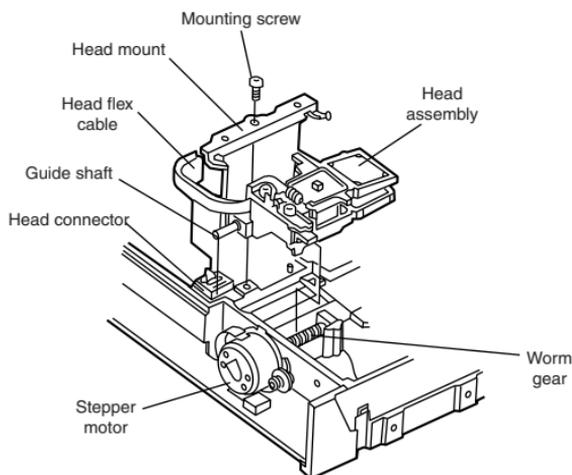


Figure 5.2 An expanded view of a stepper motor and head actuator.

On a 3 1/2-inch drive, the stepper motor is often a worm-gear arrangement rather than the band drive that was used on the older 5 1/4-inch drives. The worm gear is very compact, but can be jammed by shock. To free it up, carefully unscrew the stepper motor from the rear of the drive frame and move the head actuator back and forth

gently until the worm gear moves freely again. Reassemble the drive and test it outside the case by running the data and power cable to it before you secure it into its normal position.

Interface Circuit Boards

A drive's *interface circuit board* (also called *logic board*) can be damaged by shock, static electricity, or a power surge. Usually, it can easily be removed from the bottom of the drive and replaced by a spare circuit board from an identical drive with a bad read/write head or stepper motor. Keep such failures around for spare parts.

Read/Write Heads

Because of the contact between the heads and disk, a buildup of the magnetic material from the disk eventually forms on the heads. The buildup should periodically be cleaned off the heads as part of a preventive-maintenance or normal service program.

The best method for cleaning the heads involves the use of a commercial wet-method disk head cleaner and a program that spins the cleaning disk and moves the heads around the cleaning media. MicroSystems Development (www.msdc.com) offers the TestDrive floppy drive testing program, which contains such a cleaning utility. Depending on the drive use and the amount of contaminants (smoke, dust, soot) in the air, you should clean the read/write heads on a floppy drive only about once every six months to a year.

Do *not* use standard 3 1/2-inch floppy head cleaners with LS-120 SuperDisk floppy drives; although these drives can read and write to standard disks as well as the 120MB SuperDisk media, a conventional cleaner will damage their special read/write heads. Check www.superdisk.com for a SuperDisk-compatible cleaning kit.

Floppy Drive Hardware Resources

Whether they are built in or not, all primary floppy controllers use a standard set of system resources:

- IRQ 6 (Interrupt Request)
- DMA 2 (Direct Memory Address)
- I/O ports 3F0-3F5, 3F7 (Input/Output)

These system resources are standardized and generally not changeable. This normally does not present a problem because no other devices will try to use these resources (which would result in a conflict).

Don't Use a Floppy Drive While Running a Tape Backup

About the only circumstance that would cause a hardware conflict is the use of a floppy drive while a tape backup is running. While most high-capacity tape backup drives today no longer use the floppy interface, they still often use DMA 2 for fast data transfers. Because DMA transfers are not checked by the CPU or any other part of the system, simultaneous use of DMA 2 by a tape backup and a floppy drive can easily result in data loss on either or both media types.

Disk Drive Power and Data Connectors

Two sizes are used for disk drive power connectors. Figure 5.3 shows the original “Molex” power connector used on 5 1/4-inch floppy drives. Most 3 1/2-inch floppy drives and tape backups use a smaller connector, but either size normally has the same 4-wire pinout shown in the figure.

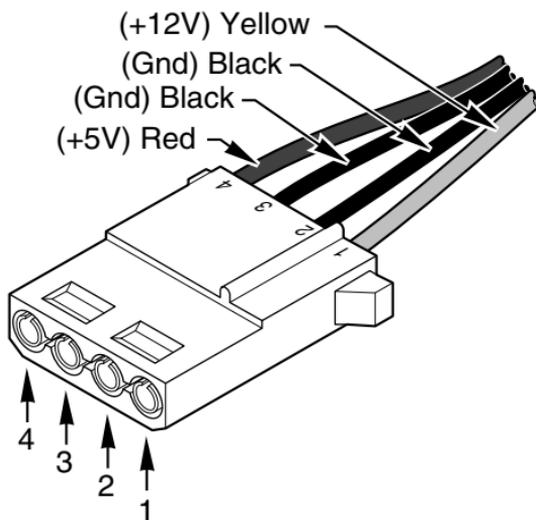


Figure 5.3 A disk drive female power supply cable connector.

Some 3 1/2-inch tape drives come with an extension cable with only two wires: a ground wire (black) and a +5v wire (red), because their motors use the same +5v power as the logic board does.

Figure 5.4 shows a typical 5-connector floppy data cable. Typically, the 5 1/4-inch edge connectors are seldom used today, unless a 3 1/2-inch drive has a pin-to-edge connector adapter attached.

Table 5.1 compares floppy and hard disk ribbon cables.

Table 5.2 Floppy Disk Logical Formatted Parameters Continued

	Current Formats					Obsolete Formats		
Tracks per Side	80	80	80	80	40	40	40	40
Sectors per Track	36	18	9	15	9	8	9	8
Bytes per Sector	512	512	512	512	512	512	512	512
Sectors per Cluster	2	1	2	1	2	2	1	1
FAT Length (Sectors)	9	9	3	7	2	1	2	1
Number of FATs	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
Root Dir. Length (Sectors)	15	14	7	14	7	7	4	4
Maximum Root Entries	240	224	112	224	112	112	64	64
Total Sectors per Disk	5,760	2,880	1,440	2,400	720	640	360	320
Total Available Sectors	5,726	2,847	1,426	2,371	708	630	351	313
Total Available Clusters	2,863	2,847	713	2,371	354	315	351	313

Floppy Drive Troubleshooting

Table 5.3 Floppy Drive Troubleshooting Tips

Problem	Cause	Solution
Dead drive—the drive does not spin and the LED never comes on.	Bad power supply or power cable.	Measure the power at the cable with a voltmeter; ensure that 12v and 5v are available to the drive.
	Drive or controller not properly configured in BIOS setup.	Check BIOS setup for proper drive type and ensure the controller is enabled if built in to the motherboard; if an add-on card contains a floppy controller and the motherboard also has one, disable one or the other.
	Bad data cable.	Replace the cable and retest.
	Defective drive.	Replace the drive and retest.
	Defective controller.	Replace the controller and retest. If the controller is built into the motherboard, disable it via the BIOS setup, install a card-based controller, and retest, or replace the entire motherboard and retest.

Table 5.3 Floppy Drive Troubleshooting Tips Continued

Problem	Cause	Solution
Drive LED remains on continuously.	Data cable is on backward at either the drive or controller connection. The data cable could be offset on the connector by one or more pins.	Reinstall the cable properly and retest. Reinstall the cable properly and retest; replace cable if this doesn't work.
Phantom directories—you have exchanged disks in the drive, but the system still believes the previous disk is inserted, and even shows directories of the previous disk.	Defective cable. Improper drive configuration. Defective drive or interface.	Replace the cable and retest. Older drives must have their DC jumper (for Drive Changeline support) enabled. Replace the drive and retest.

Note

Windows users: Windows does *not* automatically refresh the display with File Manager, Explorer, and so on by default. Use the F5 key or click Refresh to re-read the disk.

Common Floppy Drive Error Messages—Causes and Solutions**Table 5.4 Handling Floppy Drive Error Messages**

Error Message	Cause	Solution
Invalid Media or Track Zero Bad, Disk Unusable	You are formatting the disk and the disk media type does not match the format parameters. Defective or damaged disk. Dirty read/write heads.	Make sure you are using the right type of disk for your drive and formatting the disk to its correct capacity. Replace the disk and retest. Clean drive, allow heads to dry, and retest.
CRC Error or Disk Error 23	The data read from the disk does not match the data that was originally written. (CRC stands for Cyclic Redundancy Check.)	Replace the disk and retest. Clean the drive heads, allow them to dry, and retest. Use Norton Utilities or SpinRite to recover data from disk.

Table 5.4 Handling Floppy Drive Error Messages Continued

Error Message	Cause	Solution
General Failure Reading Drive A, Abort, Retry, Fail, or Disk Error 31	The disk is not formatted or has been formatted for a different operating system (Macintosh, for example). Damaged areas on the disk medium. Disk not seated properly in drive.	Reformat the disk and retest. Replace the disk and retest. Use Norton Utilities or SpinRite to recover data from disk. Remove and reinsert in drive. Try holding disk in place with your hand. If you can read the data, copy it to a reliable disk.
Access Denied	You are trying to write to a write-protected disk or file.	Move the write-protect switch to allow writing on the disk, or remove the read-only file attribute from the file(s). File attributes can be changed by the ATTRIB command or through the file properties in Windows.
Insufficient Disk Space or Disk Full	The disk is filled, or the root directory is filled.	Check to see if sufficient free space is available on the disk for your intended operation. Use folders on the disk to store files, or change to a new disk.
Bytes in Bad Sectors (greater than 0)	Displayed after FORMAT, CHKDSK, or SCANDISK if allocation units (clusters) have been marked bad.	Operating system will not use bad sectors, but this is a sign of a marginal disk; reformat or discard and use a new disk with no bad sectors.
Disk Type or Drive Type Incompatible or Bad	You are attempting to DISKCOPY between two incompatible drive disk types.	Disks can be copied only between drives using the same disk density and size. Use COPY or XCOPY unless you are trying to create an exact copy.

Removable Storage Drives

For backup or alternative main storage, many users today are de-emphasizing floppy disks in favor of alternative storage media. Table 5.5 describes the varying types of storage media, and Table 5.6 provides an overview of storage types. Of the drives listed, only the LS120/SuperDisk, Sony HiFD, and Caleb it drives are also read/write compatible with standard 3 1/2-inch floppy media.

Drives that use SCSI or IDE (ATAPI) interfaces are installed the same way as other SCSI or IDE devices. Refer to Chapter 4, “SCSI and IDE Hard Drives and Optical Drives,” for details.

Table 5.5 Quick Reference to Removable Magnetic and Flash Storage

Media Type	Media Brands	Mfrs	Capacity
Flash memory	SmartMedia, ATA Data Flash, Compact Flash, Memory Stick	Various	2MB–512MB, depends on brand and model
Flexible magnetic disk	Clik!, Zip, LS-120 SuperDisk, Sony HiFD, Caleb it	Various	40MB–250MB, depends on brand and model
Hard disk	MicroDrive	IBM	170MB and 340MB
Hard disk	DataPak	Kingston	520MB and 1GB
High-performance, flexible magnetic disk	Jaz	Imaging Technology Resources	1GB and 2GB
High-performance, hard disk cartridge	Orb	Castlewood	2.2GB
.315" magnetic tape cartridge	Travan and Travan NS	Various	Up to 10GB ¹ , depends on brand & model
ADR magnetic tape cartridge	ADR 30GB and 50GB	OnStream	15GB ¹ and 25GB ¹
DAT, Exabyte 8MM, AIT magnetic tape	Various	Various	Up to 50GB ¹

1. Uncompressed capacity: Tape drives are usually rated at 2:1 compression; multiply uncompressed capacity.

Table 5.6 Removable Drive Specifications (In Order by Capacity)

Drive Type Mfr.	Disk/Cartridge Capacity/Type	Average Seek Time	Data Transfer Rate
lomega CliK Parallel	40MB CliK	not listed	620KB/sec
lomega Zip Parallel ¹	100MB Zip	29ms	1.4MB/sec
lomega Zip IDE/ATAPI	100MB Zip	29ms	1.4Mb/sec
lomega Zip SCSI ¹	100MB Zip	29ms	1.4MB/sec
lomega Zip USB	100MB Zip	29ms	1.2MB/sec
lomega Zip 250 SCSI ²	250MB Zip	29ms	2.4MB/sec
lomega Zip 250 Parallel ²	250MB Zip	29ms	0.8MB/sec
lomega Zip 250 ATAPI/IDE ²	250MB Zip	29ms	2.4MB/sec
Imation LS-120 IDE Internal ³	120MB SuperDisk	60ms	1.1MB/sec
Imation LS-120 Parallel ⁴	120MB SuperDisk	60ms	750KB/sec
Imation LS-120 USB ⁵	120MB SuperDisk	60ms	700KB/sec
Imation LS-120 PCMCIA	120MB SuperDisk	70ms	440KB/sec
Caleb it (UHD144) ⁶	144MB UHD144	30ms	770KB/sec sustained
Parallel, PC Card burst USB, IDE/ATAPI			1.16MB/sec
Sony HiFD ⁷ Parallel	200MB HiFD	49ms	600KB/sec
Sony HiFD USB	200MB HiFD	49ms	700KB/sec
Sony HiFD ⁸ 1.2MB/IDE/ATAPI	200MB HiFD	49ms	900KB-sec write 3.6MB/sec read
lomega Jaz (SCSI) ⁹	2GB Jaz	12ms	7.35MB/sec
Castlewood ORB IDE	2.2GB ORB	12ms	12.2MB/sec
Castlewood ORB SCSI	2.2GB ORB	12ms	12.2MB/sec
Castlewood ORB Parallel	2.2GB ORB	12ms	2MB/sec

1. While lomega rates Zip 100 parallel and SCSI versions as having the same transfer rate, SCSI versions are as much as 8x faster in actual use.

2. Zip 250 drives can also read/write Zip 100 media.

3. New version; original version maximum transfer rate was 660KB/second. All LS-120 SuperDisk models can read/write standard 1.44MB/720KB 3.5" floppy media.

4. New version; original version maximum transfer rate was 290KB/second.

5. New version; original version maximum transfer rate was 400KB/second.

6. All Caleb it (UHD144) models can read/write standard 1.44MB/720KB 3.5" floppy media.

7. Parallel and USB versions of Sony HiFD sold by Sony; all HiFD models can read/write standard 1.44MB/720KB 3.5" floppy media.

8. Sold by IBM in its Options by IBM line; can read/write standard 1.44MB/720KB 3.5" floppy media.

9. Jaz 2GB drive can also read/write Jaz 1GB cartridges.

Sources for “Orphan” Drive Media, Repairs, Drivers, and Support

Several removable-media drives have become “orphans” over the last few years. While the best long-term recommendation you can make is to copy all readable data off an orphan drive and transfer it to industry-standard storage devices, you might need to buy replacement drives, media, repairs, or parts to enable your clients to complete the move to new storage devices. Use Table 5.7 to help you locate these sources.

Table 5.7 Sources for “Orphan” Drive Parts, Service, and Media

Drive	Status	Parts or Repairs	Media Drivers
Avatar Shark 250	Mfr out of business.	Weymouth Technologies (508)735-3513 www.weymouthtech.com	www.windrivers.com/company.htm (“Dead Boards” section)
Iomega Alpha 8 inch, Beta 5.25 inch, 21MB floptical, LaserSafe	Obsolete products not supported by Iomega.	Comet Enterprises, Inc. (801)444-3600 www.gocomet.com	Follow links from www.gocomet.com (some are at Iomega’s Web site, others on Comet Enterprises’ Web site)
All SyQuest products (SparQ, EZ-Flyer, others)	SYQT, Inc. purchased product and parts inventory from Iomega after Iomega bought Syquest’s intellectual property in 1999.	Parts, repairs, drives, media, and drivers are available from the SYQT, Inc. Web site: www.syqt.com .	

Emergency Access to Iomega Zip Drive Files in Case of Disaster

Most removable-media drives are optimized for use with Windows 9x/NT/2000/Me. But in the event that the operating system fails, you want to be able to access your files, even if you must boot the machine to a command prompt.

The Iomega Zip drive is the most popular removable-media drive, and files stored on the PC version can be accessed from an MS-DOS prompt using its real-mode Guest.exe driver, even if the drive was originally used with Windows 9x/NT/2000/Me. All long filenames and folder names will be displayed using their short (8+3 character) MS-DOS alias names.

Because the Iomega parallel-port Zip drive can be used on virtually any system, I recommend that organizations using Zip media have a parallel-port version, even though it's slower than other versions.

Table 5.8 indicates what is needed to access the parallel-port Zip drive. You can get the files needed from the IomegaWARE CD-ROM supplied with recent versions of the Zip drive, or from www.iomega.com. Copy the files in Table 5.8 to a bootable floppy disk.

Table 5.8 Accessing Parallel Port Zip Drives

Drive	Interface	File
Iomega Zip 100, Zip 250	Parallel Set port to EPP (best choice) or bidirectional modes, not ECP	Guest.exe, guest.ini, Aspippm1.sys, Aspippm2.sys, Nibble.ilm, Nibble2.ilm, Guesthlp.txt, Manual.exe

Parallel-port versions of the SyQuest SparQ and EzFlyer 230 drives are also available from SYQT (formerly SyQuest). SYQT's Web site (www.syqt.com) also has drivers available for Windows 95; Windows 98/98SE; Windows NT; and Windows 2000 for SparQ, EzFlyer 230, and other models.

Troubleshooting Removable Media Drives

Table 5.9 Troubleshooting Removable Media Drives

Drive/Interface	Problem	Solution
Any parallel-port model	Can't detect drive with install program.	Check for IRQ conflicts; IRQ for parallel port must not be used by sound cards or other devices; verify that install disk has correct drivers.
Any SCSI interface model	Drive not available.	Check SCSI IDs; each SCSI device must have a unique ID number; check termination; verify correct drivers installed; ASPI drivers must be installed for both SCSI interface and each device on interface.
Iomega Zip—any interface	Drive makes "clicking" sound; can't access files.	Drive might have "click of death" problem; physically examine media for damage; use Iomega Diagnostics to check media; download Trouble in Paradise (TIP) from Gibson Research (www.grc.com) for more thorough testing.
Any drive, any interface	Drive letter interferes with network, CD-ROM, and so on.	Under Windows 9x/NT/2000, check drive properties and select an available drive letter not used by CD-ROM or network.

Types of Flash Memory Devices

Several different types of flash memory devices are in common use today, and knowing which ones your digital camera is designed to use is important. The major types include the following:

- CompactFlash
- SmartMedia
- ATA PC Cards (PCMCIA)
- Memory Stick

SmartMedia and CompactFlash cards are available from many manufacturers, but Memory Sticks are available only from the originator, Sony, as of this writing.

ATA PC Cards can use flash memory or an actual hard disk. They can be read directly by the Type II or Type III PC Card (PCMCIA) slots found on most notebook computers.

CompactFlash, SmartMedia, and Sony Memory Stick flash memory devices require the use of a card reader to interface with notebook or desktop computers. Card readers can plug in to any of the following:

- Parallel port
- USB port
- PC Card Type II slot

Most devices that use flash memory storage can be connected via serial ports for downloading of images or other data, but this is much slower and is not recommended for heavy-duty use.

Tape Backup Drives and Media

Common Tape Backup Standards

Several tape backup standards exist for individual client PC and small server tape backup drives:

- **QIC, QIC-Wide, and Travan**—Three branches of a large and diverse family of low-cost “entry-level” tape backup drives, which can handle data up to 20GB@2:1 compression
- **DAT (Digital Audio Tape)**—A newer technology than QIC and its offshoots, using Digital Data Storage technology to store data up to 40GB@2:1 compression

- **OnStream's ADR (Advanced Digital Recording)**—The newest technology aimed at desktop and small network backup needs, featuring capacity up to 50GB@2:1 compression

Other tape backup standards, such as DLT (Digital Linear Tape) and 8mm are used primarily with larger network file servers and are beyond the scope of this book.

Travan Tape Drives and Media

Imation created the Travan family of tape drives to provide a standardized development from the crazy-quilt of QIC and QIC-Wide MC (minicartridge) tape drives that stemmed from the original QIC-40 and QIC-80 drives and their DC-2120 cartridges. Note that Travan-1 through Travan NS-8 retain read-only compatibility with the QIC-80 cartridge.

Table 5.10 Travan Family Cartridges and Capacities

Travan Cartridge (previous name)	Capacity/2:1 Compression	Read/Write Compatible with	Read Compatible with
Travan-1 (TR-1)	400MB/800MB	QIC-80, QW5122	QIC-40
Travan-3 (TR-3)	1.6GB/3.2GB	TR-2, QIC-3020, QIC-3010, QW-3020XLW, QW-3010XLW	QIC-80, QW-5122, TR-1
Travan 8GB (Travan 4/TR-4)	4GB/8GB	QIC-3095	QIC-3020, QIC-3010, QIC-80, QW-5122, TR-3, TR-1
Travan NS-8 ¹ QIC-80	4GB/8GB		QIC-3020, QIC-3010,
Travan NS-20	10GB/20GB		Travan 8GB, QIC-3095

1. This cartridge is replacing the Travan 8GB (TR-4); a single cartridge can be used on either NS8 or TR-4 drives.

Future developments might include an NS-36 model.

Note

Backward compatibility can vary with each drive; consult the manufacturer before purchasing any drive to verify backward-compatibility issues.

Proprietary Versions of Travan Technology

Ironically, since Travan technology was designed to bring an end to the QIC MC/QIC-Wide tape “wars”, some drives exist that use proprietary versions of the Travan standard. Non-standard sizes include

- 5GB Tecmar/Iomega DittoMax
- 5GB HP/Colorado
- 6.6GB AIWA Bolt
- 7GB Tecmar/Iomega DittoMax
- 10GB Tecmar DittoMax
- 14GB HP/Colorado

The drive manufacturer is the principal supplier of media for some of these drives, whereas others are also supported with third-party media. Consult the drive manufacturers’ Web sites for details.

For more information about older QIC and QIC-Wide tape drives and cartridges, see *Upgrading and Repairing PCs, 12th Edition*, Chapter 12.

Getting Extra Capacity with Verbatim QIC-EX Tape Media

Many older model, small-capacity tape backups are still in use on older workstations and small networks. The rapid increase in hard disk capacity is causing many problems in creating tape backups that are as safe as possible. The “1 backup = 1 tape” rule is harder to live by when Travan 3 (3.2MB compressed capacity) or smaller tape drives are used with 4GB or larger hard drives.

If you use any of the tape standards shown in Table 5.11, you can use the listed Verbatim QIC-Extra cartridges as replacements. Note that the same QIC-Extra series cartridge can be interchanged between a particular QIC, QIC-Wide, and Travan drive type. This is because QIC-EX tapes are the same width as normal QIC cartridges, but are much longer. Because some tape backup drives can’t handle the extra capacity with their own backup software, some models of QIC-EX cartridges come with replacement backup software that will use the full capacity.

Table 5.11 QIC-EX Tape Media

Original Tape	Capacity/ Compressed 2:1	Verbatim QIC-Extra	Capacity/ Compressed 2:1
QIC-80 ¹ normal length (DC-2120)	125MB/250MB	DC2120EX	400MB/800MB
QIC-80 longer length (DC-2120XL)	170MB/340MB	DC2120EX	400MB/800MB
QW5122	210MB/420MB	DC2120EX	400MB/800MB
Travan 1 (TR-1)	400MB/800MB	DC2120EX	400MB/800MB
Travan 1 (TR-1)	400MB/800MB	TR-1EX	500MB/1.0GB
QIC-3020 ²	680MB/1.36GB	MC3020EX	1.6GB/3.2GB
QW-3020	850MB/1.7GB	MC3020EX	1.6GB/3.2GB
Travan 3 (TR-3)	1.6GB/3.2GB	MC3020EX	1.6GB/3.2GB
QIC-3020 ²	680MB/1.36GB	TR-3EX	2.2GB/4.4GB
Travan 3 (TR-3)	1.6GB/3.2GB	TR-3EX	2.2GB/4.4GB

1. Also known as "Ximat"

2. Also known as "Taumat"

General guidelines only are shown in the previous table. Check with the drive and backup software vendor to verify compatibility and maximum capacity with your drive. A more detailed cross-reference listing of many popular drive models is available online at www.ceservice.com/crossrefverbatim.htm.

OnStream ADR Tape Drives and Media

OnStream ADR drives offer both standard drive-backup features and the capability to treat the cartridge as a drive letter for faster access to data. Since their introduction in 1998, these have become very popular for new installations. Unlike Travan drives, though, they do not work with any media other than their own ADR cartridges.

Table 5.12 OnStream ADR Family Specifications

Drive Model	Interface	Performance	Retail	Media Used
DI30	IDE ATAPI	1–2MB/sec	\$299	ADR 30GB
DP30	Parallel	.7–1.4MB/sec	\$399	ADR 30GB
USB30	USB	.85–1.7MB/sec	\$399	ADR 30GB
SC30	SCSI internal	2–4MB/sec	\$499	ADR 30GB
SC30	SCSI external	2–4MB/sec	\$599	ADR 30GB
FW30	IEEE-1394 (FireWire)	2–4MB/sec	\$599	ADR 30GB
SC50	SCSI internal	2–4MB/sec	\$699	ADR 50GB or 30GB
ADR50 Int	LVD SCSI internal	4–8MB/sec	\$799	ADR 50GB or 30GB
ADR50 Ext	LVD SCSI external	4–8MB/sec	\$949	ADR 50GB or 30GB

Choosing the Best High-Performance Backup Technology

Beyond Travan and ADR, several other high-performance backup technologies exist. All these technologies are available in various SCSI interface versions and can be purchased as internal or external drives. However, these drives are much more expensive than Travan or OnStream ADR drives. Additionally, they are more likely to be used as network tape backups than as individual PC backups, although current 20GB or larger EIDE hard drives are large enough to justify use of these drives for backup.

Unlike the confusing backward-compatibility picture for QIC-family drives, the more advanced drives in each family are backward compatible with smaller drives.

Table 5.13 summarizes the performance and other characteristics of these tape technologies and compares them to Travan 8GB, 20GB, and OnStream ADR. The prices of the tape drives vary tremendously depending on which version of SCSI is selected, whether the drive is internal or external, and whether a single-tape or tape library drive is selected. The approximate price range listed is for internal and external, single-cartridge tape drives.

The following standards are listed in order by native capacity. All drive interfaces are SCSI except as noted.

Table 5.13 High-Performance Tape Backup Standards Compared

Drive Type	Capacity/2:1 Compressed	Backup Speed (Native/Compressed)	Drive Price Range	Media Cost
DAT DDS-2	4GB/8GB	.5–1.1MB/sec	\$500–\$800	\$9–\$13
Travan 8GB and NS8	4GB/8GB	.6–1.2MB/sec	\$200–\$380	\$32–\$38
Exabyte 8mm (Eliant 820)	7GB/14GB	1–2MB/sec	\$1200	\$10
Travan 20GB and NS20	10GB/20GB	1–2MB/sec	\$340–\$470	\$35–\$42
DAT DDS-3	12GB/24GB	1.1–2.2MB/sec	\$700–\$1000	\$18–\$23
Exabyte 8mm (Mammoth-LT)	14GB/28GB	2–4MB/sec	\$1200–\$1500	\$40
ADR 30GB	15GB/30GB	1–2MB/sec IDE 2–4MB/sec SCSI	\$299–\$599	\$40
DAT DDS-4	20GB/40GB	2–4.8MB/sec	\$1000–\$1500	\$35–\$40
Exabyte 8mm (Mammoth)	20GB/40GB	3–6MB/sec	\$2200–\$3000	\$65–\$70
AIT-1	25GB/50GB or 35GB/70GB	3–6MB/sec	\$1500–\$2000	\$75–\$100

Table 5.13 High-Performance Tape Backup Standards Compared
Continued

Drive Type	Capacity/2:1 Compressed	Backup Speed (Native/Compressed)	Drive Price Range	Media Cost
ADR 50GB	25GB/50GB	2–4MB/sec SCSI;4–8MB/sec LVD SCSI	\$699–\$949	\$60
AIT-2	50GB/100GB	6–12MB/sec	\$3000–\$3200	\$110–\$120
DLT 2000	15GB/30GB	1.2–2.5MB/sec	\$1200–\$1300	\$30–\$50
DLT 4000	20GB/40GB	1.5–3MB/sec	\$1300–\$1850	\$60–\$75
DLT 7000	35GB/70GB	5–10MB/sec	\$4300–\$4700	\$70–\$90

Successful Tape Backup and Restore Procedures

A backup tape might be the only thing separating you from a complete loss of data. To ensure that every backup can be restored, follow the guidelines shown in Tables 5.14 and 5.15 when you create a backup or restore one.

Table 5.14 Tape Backup Tips

Tip	Benefit	Notes
Perform the confidence test during tape backup software installation.	Tests DMA channels in computer for safe data transfer; sets default transfer rate for backup.	Keep a spare blank tape at all times to enable you to perform this test whenever new hardware is installed or before running a new backup for safety.
Select the correct backup type.	“Full” backup backs up contents of system, but operating system must be restored first before restoring backup. “Disaster Recovery” backup creates special boot disks and enables entire system recovery straight from tape to an empty hard drive. Other backup types are designed primarily for data backup.	Make a disaster recovery backup and test your ability to restore your backup to an empty hard drive. Use other backup types for periodic backups.
Choose speed and safety.	Maximum data compression uses the least amount of tape and is often about as fast as other backup types. Use Compare after to ensure readability.	

Table 5.14 Tape Backup Tips Continued

Tip	Benefit	Notes
Don't use multiple tapes for a single backup.	Tape backups are typically rated with 2:1 compression assumed; this ratio is seldom achieved. Using multiple tapes for a single backup can cause loss of data if first tape is lost, because it contains tape catalog. Back up a large drive with a small tape drive by backing up sections.	Use actual compression ratio reported during your initial full backup to determine your nominal tape size. If your tape drive is a Travan 3 or smaller, get extra capacity per tape by using Verbatim QIC-EX series tapes (see Table 5.15).
Avoid multitasking during the tape backup.	Let the tape backup run without interruptions, due to DMA transfers. Turn off screensaver and power management. Turn off your monitor.	Don't use floppy drives because floppy DMA 2 is often used during backups.

Table 5.15 Tape Restore Tips

Tip	Benefit
Restore full backups to an empty drive if possible.	Avoids overwriting drive with junk data if your backup has failed.
If your full backup is not a disaster recovery type, install the smallest possible operating system image first.	You'll wait less time before you can install your backup software and restore your backup.
Run the confidence test again before you start the restore process.	Verifies that DMA transfers will be successful; this requires a blank tape or one that can be overwritten, so keep one handy.

Tape Drive Troubleshooting

Tape drives can be troublesome to install and operate. Any type of removable media is more susceptible to problems or damage, and tape is no exception. This section lists some common problems and resolutions. After each problem or symptom is a list of troubleshooting steps.

Can't Detect the Drive

For parallel-port drives, use the tape backup as the only device on the drive and check the IEEE-1284 (EPP or ECP) mode required by the drive against the parallel port configuration.

For USB drives, be sure you're using Windows 98 or higher *and* that the USB port is enabled in the BIOS; many systems originally shipped with Windows 95 have this port disabled.

For IDE drives, ensure that the master/slave jumpers on both drives are set properly.

For SCSI drives, check termination and Device ID #s.

For external drives of any type, be sure the drive is turned on a few seconds before starting the system. If not, you might be able to use the Windows 9x/2000/Me Device Manager to “Refresh” the list of devices, but if this doesn’t work, you’ll need to restart the computer.

Backup or Restore Operation Failure

If your tape drive suffers a backup or restore operation failure, follow these steps:

1. Make sure you are using the correct type of tape cartridge.
2. Remove and replace the cartridge.
3. Restart the system.
4. Retension the tape.
5. Try a new tape.
6. Clean the tape heads.
7. Make sure all cables are securely connected.
8. Rerun the confidence test that checks data transfer speed with a blank tape (this test overwrites any data already on the tape).

Bad Block or Other Tape Media Errors

To troubleshoot bad block or other types of media errors, follow these steps:

1. Retension the tape.
2. Clean the heads.
3. Try a new tape.
4. Restart the system.
5. Try initializing the tape.
6. Perform a Secure Erase on the tape (previous data will no longer be retrievable from the tape).

Note that most minicartridge tapes are preformatted and cannot be reformatted by your drive. Do not attempt to bulk erase preformatted tapes because this will render the tapes unusable.

System Lockup or System Freezing When Running a Tape Backup

If your system locks up or freezes while running a tape backup, follow these steps:

1. Ensure that your system meets at least the minimum requirements for both the tape drive and backup software.
2. Check for driver or resource (IRQ, DMA, or I/O port address) conflicts with your tape drive controller card or interface; using the floppy drive while making a floppy or parallel-port tape backup is a major cause of DMA conflicts.
3. Set the CD-ROM to master and the tape drive to slave if both are using the same IDE port.
4. Check the BIOS boot sequence; be sure it is not set to ATAPI (tape/CD-ROM) devices if the tape drive is configured as a master device or as a slave with no master.
5. Make sure the hard drive has sufficient free space; most backup programs temporarily use hard drive space as a buffer for data transfer.
6. Hard drive problems can cause the backup software to lock up. Check your hard disk for errors with SCANDISK or a comparable utility.
7. Check for viruses.
8. Check for previous tape drive installations; ensure that any drivers from previous installations are removed.
9. Temporarily disable the current VGA driver and test with the standard 640×480×16 VGA driver supplied by Microsoft. If the problem does not recur, contact your graphics board manufacturer for an updated video driver.
10. Files in some third-party Recycle Bins can cause backup software to lock up. Empty the Recycle Bin before attempting a backup.
11. Disable antivirus programs and Advanced Power Management.
12. Try the tape drive on another computer system and different operating system, or try swapping the drive, card, and cable with known good, working equipment.

Other Tape Drive Problems

Other issues that might cause problems in general with tape backups include

- Corrupted data or ID information on the tape.
- Incorrect BIOS (CMOS) settings.
- Networking problems (outdated network drivers and so on).
- The tape was made by another tape drive. If the other drive can still read the tape, this might indicate a head alignment problem or incompatible environment.

Tape Retensioning

Retensioning a tape is the process of fast forwarding and then rewinding the tape to ensure even tension exists on the tape and rollers throughout the entire tape travel. Retensioning is recommended as a preventive maintenance operation when using a new tape or after an existing tape has been exposed to temperature changes or shock (for example, dropping the tape). Retensioning also restores the proper tension to the media and removes unwanted tight spots that can develop.

Some general rules for retensioning include the following:

- Retension any tapes that have not been used for over a month or two.
- Retension tapes if you have errors reading them.
- Retension any tapes that have been dropped.
- In some cases, it might be necessary to perform the retension operation several times to achieve the proper effect. Most tape drive or backup software includes a Retension feature as a menu selection

Chapter 6

Serial Ports and Modems



Understanding Serial Ports

The asynchronous serial interface was designed as a system-to-system communications port. *Asynchronous* means that no synchronization or clocking signal is present, so characters can be sent with any arbitrary time spacing.

Each character that is sent over a serial connection is framed by a standard start-and-stop signal. A single 0 bit, called the *start* bit, precedes each character to tell the receiving system that the next eight bits constitute a byte of data. One or two stop bits follow the character to signal that the character has been sent. At the receiving end of the communication, characters are recognized by the start-and-stop signals instead of by the timing of their arrival.

Serial refers to data that is sent over a single wire, with each bit lining up in a series as the bits are sent. This type of communication is used over the phone system because this system provides one wire for data in each direction. Compared to parallel ports, serial ports are very slow, but their signals can be transmitted a greater distance. The other wires in the serial port are used to control the flow of data to or from the port.

Serial ports are also referred to as *COM* ports because they are used to communicate between devices.

Physically, serial ports come in two forms, although through adapters or specially-wired cable, they have no problems communicating with each other. The following figures show the standard 9-pin (see Figure 6.1) and 25-pin (see Figure 6.2) serial ports. The 25-pin serial port has pins sticking out, as opposed to the 25-pin parallel port, which has holes for pins.

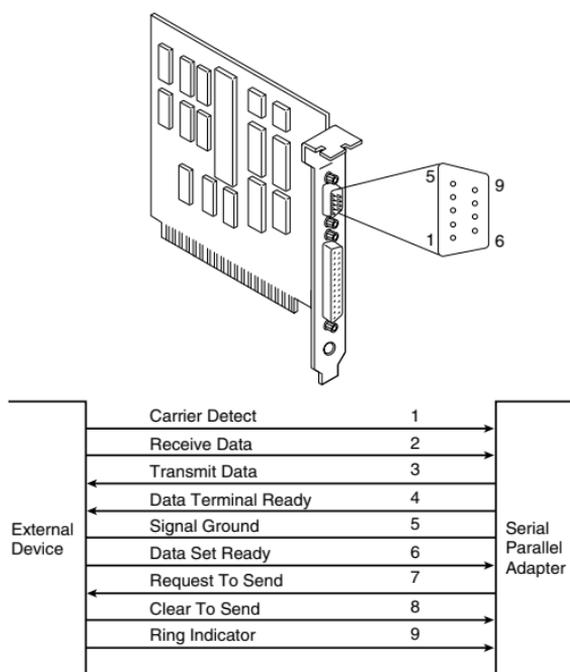


Figure 6.1 AT-style, 9-pin serial port connector specifications.

Pinouts for Serial Ports

Tables 6.1, 6.2, and 6.3 show the pinouts of the 9-pin (AT-style), 25-pin, and 9-pin-to-25-pin serial connectors.

Table 6.1 9-Pin (AT) Serial Port Connector			
Pin	Signal	Description	I/O
1	CD	Carrier detect	In
2	RD	Receive data	In
3	TD	Transmit data	Out
4	DTR	Data terminal ready	Out
5	SG	Signal ground	—
6	DSR	Data set ready	In
7	RTS	Request to send	Out
8	CTS	Clear to send	In
9	RI	Ring indicator	In

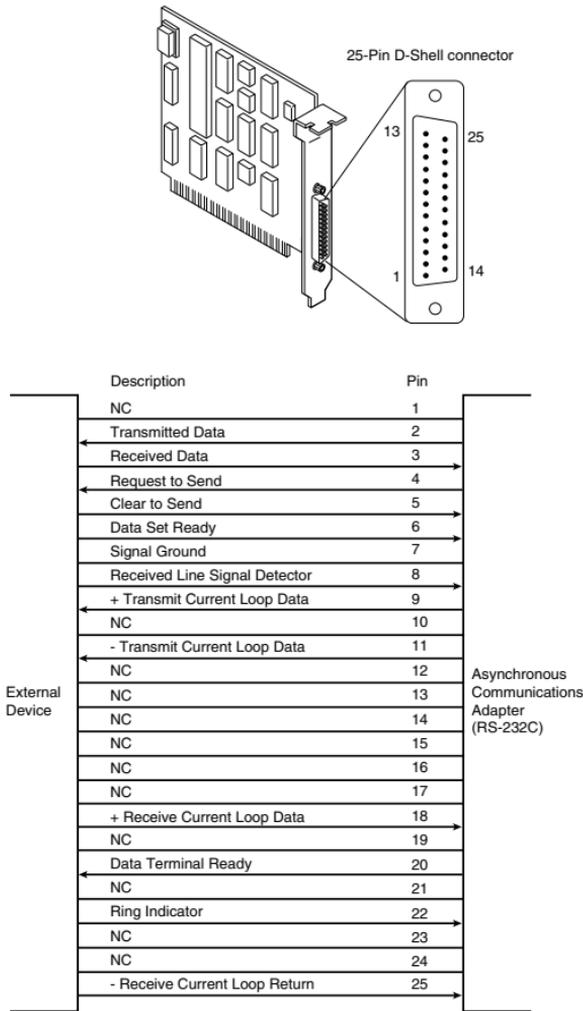


Figure 6.2 Standard 25-pin serial-port connector specifications.

Table 6.2 25-Pin (PC, XT, and PS/2) Serial Port Connector

Pin	Signal	Description	I/O
1	—	Chassis ground	—
2	TD	Transmit data	Out
3	RD	Receive data	In
4	RTS	Request to send	Out
5	CTS	Clear to send	In
6	DSR	Data set ready	In
7	SG	Signal ground	—

Table 6.2 25-Pin (PC, XT, and PS/2) Serial Port Connector**Continued**

Pin	Signal	Description	I/O
8	CD	Carrier detect	In
9	—	+Transmit current loop return	Out
11	—	-Transmit current loop data	Out
18	—	+Receive current loop data	In
20	DTR	Data terminal ready	Out
22	RI	Ring indicator	In
25	—	-Receive current loop return	In

Table 6.3 9-Pin-to-25-Pin Serial Cable Adapter Connections

9-Pin	25-Pin	Signal
1 8	CD	Carrier detect
2 3	RD	Receive data
3 2	TD	Transmit data
4 20	DTR	Data terminal ready
5 7	SG	Signal ground
6 6	DSR	Data set ready
7 4	RTS	Request to send
8 5	CTS	Clear to send
9 22	RI	Ring indicator

Note

Macintosh systems use a similar serial interface, defined as RS-422. Most external modems in use today can interface with either RS-232 or RS-422, but it is safest to make sure that the external modem you get for your PC is designed for a PC, not a Macintosh.

Current Loop Serial Devices and 25-Pin Serial Ports

Whereas normal RS-232 serial devices can be connected to either a 9-pin or a 25-pin serial port, and 9-pin devices can be adapted to a 25-pin port, another type of serial device known as a *current loop* device will work with 25-pin ports only.

By comparing Figures 6.1 and 6.2, you can see that the current-loop pins (9, 11, 18, and 25) have no corresponding pins in the 9-pin serial port. Thus, if you need to connect current-loop devices

to your computer (primarily devices for data acquisition), you must use a 25-pin serial port, not a 9-pin port. Adapters cannot be used because the current-loop pins are not present in the 9-pin port.

UARTs

The heart of any serial port is the Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART) chip. This chip completely controls the process of breaking the native parallel data within the PC into serial format and later converting serial data back into the parallel format.

A few modem models lack a true UART and use the resources of the computer and operating system for communications in place of a UART. These so-called *Winmodems* are less expensive than ordinary modems, but are slower and not compatible with non-Windows operating systems, such as Linux.

UART Types

UART chips have been improved many times over the years, and it's important to know which UART your serial port(s) uses, especially under the following circumstances:

- You want to attach a modem to the serial port.
- You plan to transfer data between machines via the serial port.
- You want to ensure reliable multitasking while using Windows with your modem.

Table 6.4 summarizes the characteristics of the major UART chips (and equivalents) found in PCs. For more information about UARTs, see Chapter 18 of *Upgrading and Repairing PCs, 12th Edition*, from Que.

Table 6.4 Overview of UART Chip Types

UART Type	Maximum Speed	Buffer	Typical System	Notes
8250	Up to 9600bps	No	8088	Original UART; replaced by 8250B
8250A	Up to 9600bps	No	8088	Not recommended because incompatible with 8250
8250B	Up to 9600bps	No	8088/286	Debugged version of 8250
16450	Up to 19200	No	386/486bps (19.2Kbps)	Minimum UART for OS/2

Table 6.4 Overview of UART Chip Types Continued

UART Type	Maximum Speed	Buffer	Typical System	Notes
16550A -> D	Up to 115000bps (115Kbps)	16-byte FIFO	386/486 Pentium	First chip suitable for multi-tasking; can be used as pin-compatible replacement for socketed 16450
16650	Up to 230000bps (230Kbps)	32-byte	Specialized I/O cards, ISDN terminal	Faster throughput than 16650 series adapters
16750	Up to 460000bps (460Kbps)	64-byte	Specialized I/O cards, ISDN terminal	Faster throughput than 16650, 16650 series adapters
16950	Up to 921600bps (921.6Kbps)	128-byte	Specialized I/O cards, ISDN terminal	Faster throughput than 16550, 16650, 16750 adapters

Note

The previous specifications reflect maximum speeds available with standard I/O card designs; some vendors use a clock-multiplication feature that can double the effective speed of some UARTs in some I/O card applications.

Identifying Your System UART

The minimum desirable UART chip is the 16550A series or above, but older systems and inexpensive multi-I/O cards might use the bufferless 8250 or 16450 series UARTs instead. Two major methods can be used to determine which UARTs you have in a system.

MS-DOS Method (also for Windows NT)

Use a diagnostic program such as Microsoft MSD, CheckIt, AMIDiag, or others to examine the serial ports. These programs also list the IRQ and I/O port addresses in use for each serial port. Because ports are virtualized under Windows, the reports from a DOS-based utility will not be accurate unless you boot straight to a DOS prompt and run the diagnostic from there.

OS/2 Method

Use the MODE COMx command from the OS/2 prompt to view serial port information. Look for an entry called Buffer in the list of serial port characteristics. If Buffer is set to Auto, the chip is a true 16650A or better. However, if Buffer is set to N/A, it's an older 16450 chip.

Windows 9x/2000/Me Method

Open the Start menu, and then choose Settings, Control Panel. Next, double-click Modems and then click the Diagnostics tab. The Diagnostics tab shows a list of all COM ports in the system, even if they don't have a modem attached to them. Select the port you want to check in the list and click More Info. Windows 95 or 98 communicates with the port to determine the UART type, and that information is listed in the Port Information portion of the More Info box. If a modem is attached, additional information about the modem is displayed.

High-Speed Serial Ports (ESP and Super ESP)

Some modem manufacturers have gone a step further in improving serial data transfer by introducing Enhanced Serial Ports (ESP) or Super High-Speed Serial Ports. These ports enable a 28.8Kbps or faster modem to communicate with the computer at data rates up to 921.6Kbps. The extra speed on these ports is generated by increasing the buffer size. These ports are usually based on a 16550, 16650, or 16750 UART, and some even include more buffer memory on the card.

Lava Computer Mfg. and Byte Runner Technologies are two of the vendors that offer a complete line of high-speed serial port cards; some models also include parallel ports.

Upgrading the UART Chip

Use Table 6.5 to determine where any UART chip might be located and what you would need to do to replace it.

Table 6.5 Upgrading UARTs

Device Type	UART Location	Upgrade Method
Internal modem	Modem chipset	Replace modem
Multi-I/O card with 8250	Socketed or soldered chips	Replace card; 16550 not pin-compatible
Multi-I/O card with 16450	Socketed or soldered chips	Remove 16450 if socketed; replace card if soldered

Table 6.5 Upgrading UARTs Continued

Device Type	UART Location	Upgrade Method
Multi-I/O card with Super I/O	Equivalent to normal UART inside a highly integrated surface-mounted chip	Replace card
Motherboard-based I/O	Socketed MB chip	Remove and replace 16450 16550AF if socketed; disable serial I/O and install new multi I/O card with 16550AF or better UART
Newer systems—UART equivalent inside Super I/O	See the section “UARTs” earlier in this chapter	Disable serial I/O and install new multi I/O card as above

Serial Port Configuration

Each time a character is received by a serial port, it has to get the attention of the computer by raising an *interrupt request line (IRQ)*. 8-bit ISA bus systems have 8 of these lines, and systems with a 16-bit ISA bus have 16 lines. The 8259 interrupt controller chip usually handles these requests for attention. In a standard configuration, COM 1 uses IRQ 4, and COM 2 uses IRQ 3.

When a serial port is installed in a system, it must be configured to use specific I/O addresses (called *ports*) and *interrupts*. The best plan is to follow the existing standards for how these devices should be set up. For configuring serial ports in either Windows or Linux, use the addresses and interrupts indicated in Table 6.6.

Table 6.6 Standard Serial I/O Port Addresses and Interrupts

COM x	I/O Ports	IRQ	Equivalent to Linux ²
COM 1	3F8–3FFh	IRQ 4	ttys0
COM 2	2F8–2FFh	IRQ 3	ttys1
COM 3	3E8–3EFh	IRQ 4 ¹	ttys2
COM 4	2E8–2EFh	IRQ 3 ¹	ttys3

1. Although many serial ports can be set up to share IRQ 3 and 4 with COM 1 and COM 2, it is not recommended. The best recommendation is setting COM 3 to IRQ 10 and COM 4 to IRQ 11 (if available). If ports above COM 3 are required, it is recommended that you purchase a special multiport serial board.
2. Linux users must use distributions based on kernel 2.2 or better to enable IRQ sharing. With older distributions, use the `setserial` command (found in the Linux startup) to assign different IRQs to devices using `ttys2` (COM3) and `ttys3` (COM4); this also requires you to configure the cards to use those IRQs. For more information about `setserial` and serial ports under Linux, refer to the Linux Serial How-To at www.linuxdoc.org/HOWTO/Serial-HOWTO.html.

Avoiding Conflicts with Serial Ports

Use Table 6.7 to understand possible conflicts with serial ports and avoid them.

Table 6.7 Troubleshooting Serial Port Conflicts

Problem	Reason	Solution
DOS-based program can't find COM 3 or 4 on modem or other device	DOS and PC BIOS support COM 1 and 2 only	Disable COM 2 and set new device to use COM 2; use Windows program instead
Device using COM 3 or 4 conflicts with COM 1 and 2	Shared IRQs don't work for ISA devices	Relocate IRQ for device to a different port. If device is external, connect to multiport board. (Windows 95/98/NT/2000 can handle up to 128 serial ports!) (see earlier)

Note

For modem troubleshooting, see the section "Modems" later in this chapter.

Troubleshooting I/O Ports in Windows 9x and Me

Windows 9x and Me can tell you whether your ports are functioning. First, you need to verify that the required communications files are present to support the serial ports in your system:

1. Verify the file sizes and dates of both COMM.DRV (16-bit serial driver) and SERIAL.VXD (32-bit serial driver) in the SYSTEM directory, compared to the original versions of these files from the Windows CD-ROM. They should be the same date or *later*, not older.
2. Confirm that the following lines are present in SYSTEM.INI:

```
[boot]
comm.drv=comm.drv
[386enh]
device=*vcd
```

The SERIAL.VXD driver is not loaded in SYSTEM.INI; instead, it is loaded through the Registry.

If both drivers are present and accounted for, you can determine whether a particular serial port's I/O address and IRQ settings are properly defined by following these steps (which also work with Windows 2000):

1. Right-click the My Computer icon and select Properties. Or, you can open Control Panel and left-click the System icon twice.

Then, click the Device Manager tab, Ports entry, and select a specific port (such as COM 1).
2. Click the Properties button and then click the Resources tab to display the current resource settings (IRQ, I/O) for that port.
3. Check the Conflicting Devices List to see whether the port is using resources that conflict with other devices. If the port is in conflict with other devices, click the Change Setting button and then select a configuration that does not cause resource conflicts. You might need to experiment with these settings until you find the right one.
4. If the resource settings cannot be changed, they most likely must be changed via the BIOS Setup. Shut down and restart the system, enter the BIOS setup, and change the port configurations there.

In addition to the COM 1/COM 3 and COM 2/COM 4 IRQ conflicts noted earlier, some video adapters have an automatic address conflict with COM 4's I/O port address (not IRQ).

You can also use the Modems Diagnostic tab (discussed earlier in this chapter) to test a serial port, whether or not a modem is actually present.

Advanced Diagnostics Using Loopback Testing

One of the most useful types of diagnostic test is the *loopback test*, which can be used to ensure the correct function of the serial port and any attached cables. Loopback tests are basically internal (digital) or external (analog). You can run internal tests by unplugging any cables from the port and executing the test via a diagnostics program.

The external loopback test is more effective. This test requires that a special loopback connector or wrap plug be attached to the port in question. When the test is run, the port is used to send data out to the loopback plug, which routes the data back into the port's receive pins so that the port is transmitting and receiving at the same time. A *loopback* or *wrap plug* is nothing more than a cable that is doubled back on itself.

Following is a list of the wiring necessary to construct your own loopback or wrap plugs. Check with the vendor of your testing software to determine which loopback plug design you need to use, or purchase pre-built ones from the vendor.

Loopback Plug Pinouts—Serial Ports

- Standard IBM type 25-Pin Serial (Female DB25S) Loopback Connector (Wrap Plug). Connect the following pins:
 - 1 to 7
 - 2 to 3
 - 4 to 5 to 8
 - 6 to 11 to 20 to 22
 - 15 to 17 to 23
 - 18 to 25
- Norton Utilities (Symantec) 25-Pin Serial (Female DB25S) Loopback Connector (Wrap Plug). Connect the following pins:
 - 2 to 3
 - 4 to 5
 - 6 to 8 to 20 to 22
- Standard IBM type 9-Pin Serial (Female DB9S) Loopback Connector (Wrap Plug). Connect the following pins:
 - 1 to 7 to 8
 - 2 to 3
 - 4 to 6 to 9
- Norton Utilities (Symantec) 9-Pin Serial (Female DB9S) Loopback Connector (Wrap Plug). Connect the following pins:
 - 2 to 3
 - 7 to 8
 - 1 to 4 to 6 to 9

To make these loopback plugs, you need a connector shell with the required pins installed. Then, you must wire wrap or solder wires, interconnecting the appropriate pins inside the connector shell as specified in the preceding list (see Figure 6.3).

One advantage of using loopback connectors is that you can plug them into the ends of a cable that is included in the test. This can verify that both the cable and the port are working properly.

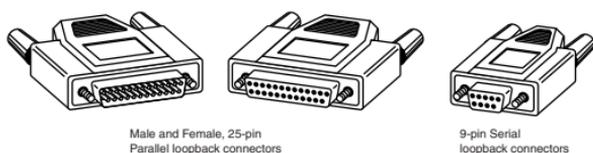


Figure 6.3 Typical wrap plugs including 25-pin, 9-pin serial, and 25-pin parallel versions.

Modems

Modems provide a vital communications link between millions of small- to medium-sized businesses and homes and the Internet, electronic banking, and other services. The following information will help you get the most out of your modem.

Modems and Serial Ports

External modems connect to existing serial ports and don't contain a UART chip. Most internal modems contain their own serial port and do contain a UART chip.

Any external modem that will be used at speeds of 28Kbps or above must be connected to a 16550A-type UART or better to run at top speeds. For best results with external ISDN terminal adapters, use serial ports equipped with 16750 or 16950 UARTs because they support maximum speeds in excess of 460Kbps.

Modem Modulation Standards

Modems are frequently identified by their protocols. Use Table 6.8 to determine the speed and other characteristics of a particular protocol. Most modems support multiple protocols.

Table 6.8 Modem Modulation Standards and Transmission Rates

Protocol	Maximum Transmission Rate (bps)	Duplex Mode
Bell 103	300bps	Full
CCITT V.21	300bps	Full
Bell 212A	1200bps	Full
ITU V.22	1200bps	Half
ITU V.22bis	2400bps	Full
ITU V.23	1,200/75bps	Pseudo-Full
ITU V.29	9,600bps	Half
ITU V.32	9,600bps	Full

Table 6.8 Modem Modulation Standards and Transmission Rates Continued

Protocol	Maximum Transmission Rate (bps)	Duplex Mode
ITU V.32bis	14,400bps (14.4Kbps)	Full
ITU V.32fast	28,800bps (28.8Kbps)	Full
ITU V.34	28,800bps (28.8Kbps)	Full
ITU V.34bis	33,600bps (33.6Kbps)	Full
ITU V.90	56,000bps (56Kbps) ¹	Full

1. While the ITU V.90 (successor to the proprietary 56Kflex and X2 standards) allows for this speed of transmission, the U.S. FCC (Federal Communications Commission) allows only 53,000bps (53Kbps) at this time.

56Kbps Standards

Virtually every modem sold today corresponds to one or more of the so-called 56Kbps standards for faster downloading from an Internet service provider (ISP). Uploading to a remote computer must run at the slower V.34bis speeds.

Table 6.9 lists the original and final 56Kbps standards.

Table 6.9 56Kbps Modem Standards

Standard	Modem Chipsets Supported (Major Brand Example)	Notes
x2	Texas Instruments US Robotics	First 56Kbps standard in use; not compatible with K56flex.
K56flex	Rockwell Hayes, Zoom	Second 56Kbps standard in use; not compatible with x2.
V.90	All 56Kbps modems with updated firmware	Official ITU standard has replaced previous proprietary standards listed previously.
V.92	New ITU standard	Will allow higher upload speed (to 44Kbps), quicker access, and call-waiting compatibility. Look for products in late 2000 or early 2001. Might require new chipsets.

Because 56Kbps was originally a proprietary standard that was chipset dependent, many early adopters have had problems getting high-speed access as more and more ISPs have switched their x2- or K56flex-specific modem pools to V.90. Table 6.10 provides guidelines for upgrading your non-V.90 modem to the V.90 standard.

Table 6.10 Upgrade Options to V.90

Original Modem Model	Firmware in Modem	Upgrade Method
x2 or K56flex	Flash-upgradable	Check manufacturer's Web site for download to upgrade firmware.
x2 or K56flex	Not upgradable	Check manufacturer's Web site for details about a physical modem swap; might cost money.
V.34bis or earlier	Any	A firmware download or physical modem swap will be involved; will cost money.
Hayes, Practical Peripherals, and Cardinal Technologies (all defunct)	Any	Contact Modem Express at 612-553-2075 or on the Web at www.hayes.com for upgrades and drivers (costs and availability will vary by brand and model). Hayes-brand modems produced after June 11, 1999 are products of Zoom Telephonics, and are supported by Zoom's Hayes division. Check www.hayesmicro.com for details.

Upgrading from x2 or K56flex to V.90 with Flash Upgrades

The flash upgrades to V.90 work like a BIOS upgrade for a PC: You download the appropriate software from the modem vendor, run the flash software, wait a few minutes, and your modem is ready to dial in to V.90-based ISPs at top speeds. One major problem is what happens *inside* the modem to the existing firmware:

- **X2 Modems to V.90**—x2 and V.90 firmware can coexist in modem.
- **K56flex to V.90**—Most K56flex modems don't have room for both sets of firmware, so the V.90 firmware *replaces* the K56flex. The lack of a fallback standard has caused problems for some users of V.90 modems that were upgraded from K56flex models. Table 6.11 will help you find a solution if your V.90 connections aren't reliable.

Table 6.11 Troubleshooting the V.90 (ex-K56flex) Modems

Problem	Solution	Method
Can't get reliable connection with V.90.	Download and install the latest firmware revisions from the vendor's Web site, even if you have a brand new modem.	If you're having problems making the connection, dial in with your modem on a 33.6Kbps line, or pretend that your modem is an older model by installing it as a 33.6Kbps model from the same vendor.

Table 6.11 Troubleshooting the V.90 (ex-K56flex) Modems**Continued**

Problem	Solution	Method
Your ISP supports both V.90 and K56flex, and you'd like a choice.	If your modem is a so-called "Dualmode" modem, install both K56flex and V.90 firmware. If your modem won't permit both firmware types, download both V.90 and K56flex firmware, try both, and see which one works better.	The modem needs to have a 2MB ROM chip to have sufficient room for both firmware types.
You're not sure the latest firmware upgrade was really an improvement.	If your vendor has several versions of firmware available for download, try some of the earlier versions, as well as the latest version. An earlier version might actually work better for you.	
Your modem is a non-U.S./Canada model.	Download the country-specific upgrade for your modem.	Check the Web site for your country; contact tech support if your country isn't listed.
The firmware upgrade was installed, and the modem only works at 33.6Kbps or less.	Make sure you are using a V.90 dial-up number. Make sure you downloaded updated INF files or other drivers for your operating system.	

Note

The problems with moving from K56flex to V.90 do not apply to users who have updated their V.34/V.34bis modems directly to the V.90 standard, whether by a downloadable firmware update or physical modem or chip swap. Even if your V.34/V.34bis modem was made by a company that later made K56flex modems, you don't need to worry about this unless you updated to K56flex before going to V.90. Then, the troubleshooting advice given earlier applies to you as well.

External Versus Internal Modems

Both external and internal modems are available for desktop systems. Table 6.12 helps you determine which type is better suited to your needs.

Table 6.12 External Versus Internal Modems		
Features	External	Internal
Built-in 16550 UART or higher	No (uses computer's serial port UART or can use USB).	Yes (if 14.4Kbps or faster).
Price comparison	Higher.	Lower.
Extras to buy	RS-232 Modem Interface cable or USB cable.	Nothing.
Ease of moving to another computer	Easy—unplug the cables and go! (USB modems require a functioning USB port on the other computer and Windows 98, 2000, or Me. ¹)	Difficult—must open case and remove card, open other PC's case and insert card.
Power supply	Plugs into wall (brick type).	None—powered by host PC.
Reset if modem hangs	Turn modem off, and then on again.	Restart computer.
Monitoring operation	Easy—External signal lights.	Difficult—unless your communication software simulates the signal lights.
Interface type	Almost always via the RS-232 port although, USB modems are now on the market. Parallel-port modems were made a few years ago, but never proved. Popular	Traditionally ISA, but many models now available in PCI, which should work better in new machines, allow mapping of COM 3 and 4 away from COM 1 and 2 to avoid IRQ sharing, and will be usable in machines of the future that will lack ISA slots. Portable computers use PC Card modems in either dedicated or combo card types.

1. Although late versions of Windows 95 OSR 2.x have USB support, many USB devices actually require Windows 98 or better. Use Windows 98, 2000, or Me to achieve more reliable support for USB devices.

Modem Troubleshooting

Table 6.13 will help you troubleshoot modem problems and get you back online.

Table 6.13 Modem Troubleshooting (All Types)

Modem Type	Problem	Solution
Any	Modem fails to dial.	<p>Check line and phone jacks on modem. Line jack—modem to telco service.</p> <p>Phone jack—modem to telephone receiver.</p> <p>If you've reversed these cables, you'll get no dial tone.</p> <p>Check the cable for cuts or breaks. If the cable looks bad, replace it.</p> <p>Make sure your modem has been properly configured by your OS. With Windows 9x, use the Modems icon in Control Panel to view and test your modem configuration. From the General tab, click the Diagnostics tab, click your modem on the serial port it's installed on, and then click More Info. This sends test signals to your modem. A properly working modem responds with information about the port and the modem.</p>
External	Modem fails to dial.	<p>Make sure the RS-232 modem cable is running from the modem to a working serial port on your computer and that it is switched on. Signal lights on the front of the modem can be used to determine if the modem is on and if it is responding to dialing commands. Make sure a USB modem is plugged tightly into a USB port. If it is connected to an external hub, verify that the hub is connected to your system.</p>
PCMCIA/PCCard	Modem fails to dial.	<p>Make sure it is fully plugged into the PCMCIA/PC Card slot. With Windows 9x/Me, you should see a small PCMCIA/PC card icon on the toolbar. Double-click it to view the cards that are currently connected. If your modem is properly attached, it should be visible. Otherwise, remove it, reinsert it into the PCMCIA/PC card slot, and see if the computer detects it.</p> <p>Check dongle used to attach modem PCMCIA/PC card modems to jack; carry a spare. If your dongle doesn't have a connector to a standard phone line, use a line coupler to attach the short dongle cable to a longer standard RJ-11 cable for easier use. Carry at least a 10 RJ-11 phone cable with you for easier use in hotel rooms.</p>

Table 6.13 Modem Troubleshooting (All Types) Continued

Modem Type	Problem	Solution
Any	<p>Couldn't Open Port error message.</p> <p>System can't dial from wall jack.</p>	<p>Modem might be in use already, or IRQ I/O port-address conflict. Use Device Manager to check settings, and reinstall drivers.</p> <p>Never use a wall jack unless it is clearly marked as a "data jack" or you check with the staff. A digital phone system's jack looks identical to the safe analog jack your modem is made for, but its higher voltage will fry your phone. You can get phone-line voltage testers from sources such as http://warrior.com. If your hotel telephone has a data jack built-in, use it. Some hotels now offer built-in Ethernet in some rooms, so carry your NIC with you as well for faster Web access.</p>
Internal	System locks up when trying to boot up or dial modem.	<p>Modem trying to share a non-sharable IRQ with another port, probably a mouse. Move a serial mouse that uses the same IRQ as the modem to a different COM port with a different IRQ (from COM 1/IRQ 4 to COM 2/IRQ 3), or use a PS/2 mouse (IRQ 12). If your Pentium-class system lacks a visible PS/2 port, check with your system vendor for the (optional) header cable you need.</p> <p>Disable your system's COM 2; set the modem to COM 2 using IRQ 3.</p>
External	Computer can't detect modem.	<p>Check cable type. Must be RS-232 modem (not null modem or straight-through) cable (see the following pinouts).</p> <p>Check power switch and supply.</p> <p>COM port might not be working.</p> <p>Check BIOS and enable COM port; test port with CheckIt, Windows 9x/2000/ME Modem diagnostics, others; use loopback plug with CheckIt, AMIDiag, Norton, and so on for most thorough check.</p> <p>Check for IRQ conflicts.</p>
USB	Computer can't detect modem.	<p>Check USB ports; enable if necessary.</p> <p>Check USB cables and hubs.</p>

Using Your Modem Sound to Diagnose Your V.90 Modem Connection

If you listen to your modem when it makes a connection, you may have realized that various types of modems make a distinctive connection sound, and that different connection speeds also make distinctive sounds.

The three types of 56Kbps modems (K56flex, X2, and V.90) have distinctly different “handshakes” of tones, buzzes, and warbles as they negotiate speeds with the ISP’s modem. Learning what your modem sounds like when it makes a 56Kbps connection and when it settles for a V.34-speed connection can help you determine when you should hang up and try to connect at a faster speed.

The “56K=v.unreliable” Web site’s troubleshooting section has a number of sound samples of various modems you can play back with Real Audio:

<http://www.808hi.com/56k/trouble3.htm>

Compare these sound samples to your own modem; make sure you adjust the speaker volume for your modem so you can hear it during the call.

Regardless of the modem, two handshake sounds indicate that your modem tried to connect at its 56Kbps mode, but failed and had to settle for the v.34 speed of 33.6Kbps or less.

Support for “Brand X” Modems

Many computer users today didn’t install their modems, or even purchase them as a separate unit. Their modems came “bundled” inside the computer, and often have a bare-bones manual that makes no mention of the modem’s origin or where to get help. Getting V.90 firmware, drivers, or even jumper settings for OEM modems like this can be difficult.

One of the best Web sites for getting help when you don’t know where to start is www.windrivers.com, which features a modem identification page with the following features:

- FCC ID: Enter the FCC ID number attached to the modem to determine who made it
- Lookup by chipset manufacturer
- Modem throughput tests
- Links to major modem manufacturers

Pinouts for External Modem Cable (9-Pin at PC)

For most external modems, you need an RS-232 modem cable, which will have a 9-pin connector on one end and a 25-pin connector on the other end. Because RS-232 is a flexible standard encompassing many different pinouts, be sure the cable is constructed according to the following diagram:

1. PC (with 9-pin COM port - male)
Modem (25-pin port - female)

3	TX data	2
2	RX data	3
7	RTS	4
8	CTS	5
6	DSR	6
5	SIG GND	7
1	CXR	8
4	DTR	20
9	RI	22

2. If you purchase an RS-232 modem cable pre-built at a store, you'll have a cable that works with your PC and your modem. However, you can use the preceding chart to build your own cable or, by using a cable tester, determine whether an existing RS-232 cable in your office is actually made for modems or some other device.

Win98SE, Windows 2000, Windows Me, and ICS

Windows 98 Second Edition, Windows 2000 Professional, and the new Windows Millennium Edition (Windows Me) all feature a built-in gateway program called *ICS* (*Internet Connection Sharing*), which allows users to share a single dial-up, ISDN, cable modem, or xDSL connection. Win98SE, Windows Millennium Edition, and Windows 2000 Professional can be purchased as an upgrade to older versions of Windows, and users of the original version of Windows 98 can purchase a CD-ROM from Microsoft that will upgrade the original version to the Second Edition.

Because ICS is a gateway and clients use TCP/IP networking to use the gateway, only the gateway computer needs to use Win98SE,

Windows 2000, or Windows Me. Any computer using TCP/IP with the option to set up a gateway can be used as a client, including computers using older versions of Windows 9x and other operating systems.

Requirements for ICS

ICS requires a NIC (Network Interface Card) to be installed in the host computer and a network connection to each guest computer to share the host's Internet connection.

If the Internet connection is made through a NIC (as is the case with xDSL or two-way cable modem connections), two NICs are required: one for the Internet connection and one for sharing the connection.

ICS will not work with one-way cable modems or with DirecPC because these devices use a separate connection for downloading and uploading.

Overview of the Configuration Process

The configuration process has two parts:

- Installing ICS on the gateway computer
- Configuring the clients to use the ICS gateway to reach the Internet

Configuring ICS on the Gateway Computer with Windows 98SE or Windows Me

If ICS was not installed when Windows was installed, install it by choosing Start, Settings, Add/Remove Programs, Windows Setup. Select ICS from the Internet Tools category (Win98 Second Edition) or from the Communications category (WinMe).

Note

Windows Me will start the Home Networking Wizard as soon as you install ICS; the Home Networking Wizard performs the same tasks as ICS in the same sequence as discussed in the following list.

Next, specify whether you are using a dial-up connection (modem or ISDN) or a high-speed connection (LAN, including cable modem or DSL).

If you select dial-up, choose the dial-up connection (which must be set up already) you'll be sharing, followed by the NIC (Network

Interface Card) that connects you with the client PC's that will share the connection.

Windows will create a client configuration floppy and will prompt you to reboot the computer.

When you view the Network Configuration in the Control Panel after rebooting, you should see the following:

- Three “adapters” (your actual NIC, the Dial-Up adapter, and a new one called Internet Connection Sharing)
- Three Internet Connection Sharing protocol entries, listing the previously mentioned adapters
- Three TCP/IP protocol entries, listing the previously mentioned adapters

The TCP/IP protocol entry for “Home” must point to the NIC that connects the clients to the host PC; the TCP/IP protocol entry called “Shared” must point to Dial-Up Networking; and the remaining TCP/IP protocol entry must point to Internet Connection Sharing.

Also, check the TCP/IP configuration for “Home” (the NIC) and verify the IP address; it should be 192.168.0.1. This IP address must be provided to the computers that will share the Internet connection.

If the settings aren't correct, remove ICS and start over.

Start an Internet connection on the gateway (host) computer before continuing.

Configuring ICS on the Client Computers with a Windows 9x/Me Host

Although the ICS configuration process on the gateway (host) computer created a disk that can be used for setting up the ICS connection on client computers, most non-Microsoft sources advocate using manual configuration instead. The following steps are required:

- Install the TCP/IP protocol on each client.
- Set the Gateway option in the TCP/IP properties for each client's NIC to the IP address of the gateway (ICS) computer: 192.168.0.1 is the usual value (see above). Click Add to insert this value after you enter it.

- Use a Web browser on each guest to verify the connection is working; Internet Explorer should not have any dial-up settings configured for it, and should have no LAN settings enabled. The ICS client for Windows 98 disk selects Use a Proxy Server here, which is not correct. Netscape Navigator/Communicator should be set to Direct Connection to the Internet.
- Some versions of Netscape Navigator might not work unless you create a Dial-Up Networking “adapter” on the guest and set its gateway as previously discussed.

Reboot before you test the connection.

Setting Up ICS with a Windows 2000 Host Computer

Windows 2000 has built-in Internet connection sharing features. Log in as administrator before starting the following procedure. As with ICS for Windows 9x/Me, a LAN connection to the Internet must be shared by way of a second LAN card.

To share a connection, follow these steps:

1. Open the Network and Dial-Up Connections icon in the Control Panel.
2. Right-click the connection you want to share and select Properties.
3. Select the Internet Connection Sharing tab and enable sharing on your computer.
4. If this is a modem connection, you can select the Enable On-Demand Dialing check box on the same tab as Internet Connection sharing. Enabling this feature launches the connection whenever other computers connected to this host computer need Internet access.

To connect to a shared connection on a Windows 2000 host, follow these steps:

1. Make sure you are running Windows 9x, Windows NT, or Windows 2000 Professional on your client.
2. Verify that the NIC that connects your client to the host is set to the following:
 - Obtain an IP address automatically
 - Use DHCP for WINS resolution
 - Connect to a DNS server automatically

(These settings require changes to the default settings for your NIC's TCP/IP properties.)

3. Adjust the Internet Explorer settings to the following:

- Never Dial a connection
- Use a LAN connection
- Automatically detect settings
- Don't use automatic configuration script
- Don't use a proxy server

Note

Useful Web sites that cover this process in more detail include

<http://www.timhiggins.com/ppd/icsinstall.htm>

<http://www.duxcw.com/digest/Howto/network/win98se/>

The following Microsoft Web page answers common questions about Win98SE:

<http://support.microsoft.com/support/windows/faq/win98se/w98seics.asp>

If you want the additional benefits of a proxy server, check out products such as WinProxy (www.winproxy.com), WinGate (www.wingate.deerfield.com), and Sybergen SyGate (www.sybergen.com). Many home-oriented networks and modems are bundled with these or similar products, so if you're in the market for a new modem or are building a small network, ask whether a proxy server program for Internet sharing is included with your home or small-office networking kit.

Chapter 7

Parallel Ports, Printers, Scanners, and Drives

Parallel Port Connectors

Three different types of parallel port connectors are defined by the IEEE-1284 parallel port standard. In Figure 7.1, the DB-25 connector used on PCs for parallel cables (also called Type A) is on the left. The Centronics 36 connector (also called Type B) is in the middle. Virtually every parallel-interface printer, from the oldest dot-matrix to the newest laser printer, uses the Type B connector. Hewlett-Packard introduced the Type C connector and has added it to most of its recent laser printers, although it still uses the Type B connector as well. Type C is a high-density connector that uses a cable with an integral clip, as opposed to the clumsy, easy-to-lose wire clips used on the Type B port.

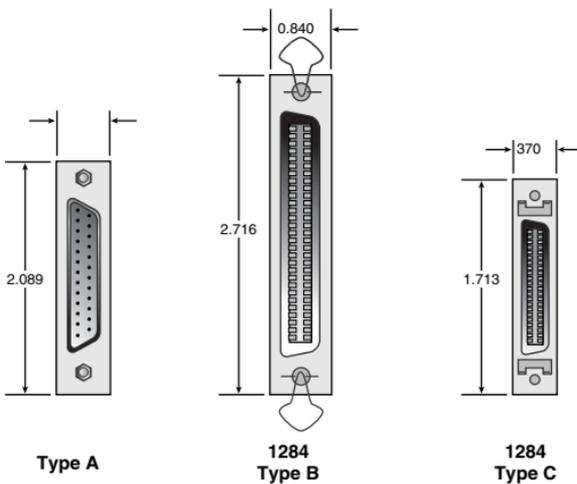


Figure 7.1 The three types of IEEE-1284 parallel port connectors.

You can see these connectors, along with all the others on the back of your system, in Chapter 14, “Connector Quick Reference.”

Parallel Port Performance

As printers have gotten faster and more devices are attached to parallel ports, the need for increasing parallel port speed has become more and more apparent. High-speed laser and inkjet printers, tape backup drives, CD-RW drives, and parallel port-to-SCSI converters can all benefit from using the fastest parallel port modes available on your system.

Use the following tables to help determine whether your parallel ports are set to the fastest standard supported by your printers or other parallel port devices. On most computers, you adjust these parallel port settings through the CMOS/BIOS configuration screens. If the port is on an expansion card, you might use jumper blocks or a setup program to change the settings.

Table 7.1 summarizes the various types of parallel ports, their input and output modes, speed, and hardware settings.

Table 7.1 Parallel Port Types as Defined by IEEE-1284

Parallel Port Type	Input Mode	Output Mode	Input/Output Speed	Comments
SPP (Standard Parallel Port)	Nibble (4 bits)	Compatible	Input: 50KB/second Output: 150KB/second	4-bit input, 8-bit output
	Compatible (8 bits)	Input/Output	Bidirectional 8-bit I/O: 150KB/second	Byte
EPP (Enhanced Parallel Port)	EPP	EPP	Input/Output: 500KB– 2MB/sec	8-bit I/O, uses IRQ
ECP (Enhanced Capabilities Port)	ECP	ECP	Input/Output: 500KB– 2MB/sec	8-bit I/O, uses IRQ and DMA

EPP Versus ECP Modes

Both EPP and ECP ports are part of the IEEE-1284 bidirectional parallel port standard, but they are not identical. Use the following table to understand how they differ, and consult your parallel port device manuals to see which mode is best for your system.

Port Type	IRQ Usage	DMA Usage	Designed For	Notes
EPP	Yes (Table 7.2)	No	Tape drives, CD-ROM, LAN adapters	Version 1.7 predates IEEE-1284 standard; IEEE-1284 version often called EPP 1.9

Port Type	IRQ Usage	DMA Usage	Designed For	Notes
ECP	Yes (Table 7.2)	DMA 3 (Standard) DMA 1 (Optional; default on some Packard- Bell models)	High-speed printers, scanners	Many systems offer an EPP/ECP port setting for best results with all types of parallel port devices

Some older parallel printers don't recommend either mode and might print erratically if EPP or ECP modes are enabled. and ECP ports

Prerequisites for EPP and ECP Modes

To use these advanced modes, you must

- Enable the appropriate mode on the parallel port (see previous section)
- Use a parallel cable rated for IEEE-1284 uses

The IEEE-1284-compatible printer cable transports all signal lines to the printer, is heavily shielded, and produces very reliable printing with old and new printers alike in any parallel port mode. IEEE-1284 cables can also be purchased in a *straight-through* version for use with printer-sharing devices.

Parallel Port Configurations

Table 7.2 lists the standard parallel port settings. While add-on multi-I/O or parallel port cards can offer additional settings, other settings will work only if software can be configured to use them.

Table 7.2 Parallel Interface I/O Port Addresses and Interrupts

Standard LPTx	Alternate LPTx	I/O Ports	IRQ
LPT1	—	3BC-3BFh	IRQ 7
LPT1	LPT2	378-37Ah	IRQ 7 (LPT1) IRQ 5 (LPT2)
LPT2	LPT3	278h-27Ah	IRQ 5

Testing Parallel Ports

The most reliable way to test printer ports is to use a parallel port testing program along with the appropriate loopback plug. This method isolates the port and allows the system to capture output back as input. Parallel port testing programs are included in major diagnostic programs, such as Norton Utilities, CheckIt, AMIDiag, QA+ family, MicroScope 2000, and many others.

Building a Parallel Loopback Plug

Several loopback plugs are used for parallel ports because of the different testing procedures performed by the various diagnostic programs. If you have the correct pinouts, you can build your own, or you can purchase them directly from the diagnostic software company, either with the software or separately.

Most use the IBM style loopback, but some use the style that originated in the Norton Utilities diagnostics. *Check with your diagnostic software vendor to see which of these loopback designs is the correct one for your system, or if a different design is needed.*

The following wiring is necessary to construct your own loopback or wrap plugs to test a parallel port:

- IBM 25-Pin Parallel (Male DB25P) Loopback Connector (Wrap Plug). Connect the following pins:

1 to 13

2 to 15

10 to 16

11 to 17

- Norton Utilities 25-Pin Parallel (Male DB25P) Loopback Connector (Wrap Plug). Connect the following pins:

2 to 15

3 to 13

4 to 12

5 to 10

6 to 11

Troubleshooting Parallel Ports

Table 7.3 Resolving Parallel Port Problems

Symptoms	Cause(s)	Solution
Device on port not recognized; can't configure printer; printer won't print	Wrong parallel-port setting	Check device manual; probably need to change port to EPP, ECP, or EPP/ECP mode.
	Wrong cable	If you're using EPP or ECP, you must use an IEEE-1284 cable.

Table 7.3 Resolving Parallel Port Problems Continued

Symptoms	Cause(s)	Solution
	Switchbox between device and computer	All cables and switchbox must be IEEE-1284-compliant; remove switchbox and connect directly to device. If it works, replace non-compliant switchbox or cables.
	IRQ or I/O port address conflict	EPP and ECP require a non-shared IRQ; use Windows 9x Device Manager to see whether IRQ for LPT (parallel) port is conflicting with another device; also check I/O port address and DMA.
	Device not powered on	Power on device before starting computer.
	Port defective	Use loopback and test software to verify data going out port is readable.

Printers

Printers can be attached to your computer in a variety of ways. Major interfaces used for printers include those listed in Table 7.4.

Table 7.4 Printer Interface Standards and Recommended Uses

Interface Type Required	Benefits	Drawbacks	Operating System
Parallel (LPT)	Relatively fast, especially if EPP or ECP modes are used. Supported by virtually any application that can print. No port speed or setup options required in most cases. Standard cable works with virtually any PC and printer combination.	Regular printer cable length restricted to 10 feet due to signalloss. Daisy-chaining with other peripherals doesn't always work. Printer must be last device on daisy-chain.	Works with any operating system.
Serial (RS-232/COM)	Standard cable can reach up to 50 feet; use line drivers and phone cable to reach hundreds of feet. Printer can work with terminals, PCs, or Macintoshes with appropriate cable.	Serial port speed, word length, and stop bits must be set for both printer and application for printing to work. Very slow graphics printing. Different printers require custom cabling.	Works with any operating system, but is obsolete for PC use.

Table 7.4 Printer Interface Standards and Recommended Uses Continued

Interface Type Required	Benefits	Drawbacks	Operating System
USB	Faster than most parallel port modes. Devices can be daisy-chained through hubs in any order. Hot-swappable; printer can be moved to any USB-based system. Many devices are cross-platform-compatible with both PCs and Macs.	Driver problems causing difficulty for many USB-based ² printers, especially certain HP inkjet models.	Requires Windows 98, Windows 2000, or Windows Me ¹ .
PC Card	Provides power to printer; no electrical cord needed. Allows design of very compact printers for use with notebook computers.	Fragile PC Card can be broken or damaged. Printers with this interface can't work with desktop computers; might need to remove a PC Card from the notebook computer to enable printing.	Varies with printer.
Network	Enables sharing of a single, high-performance printer among many clients. Fast networks allow printing about as fast as local printing. Can "print" offline to queue and release when printer becomes available.	Requires network cards and configuration. Low-cost, host-based printers can't be networked.	Works with any network operating system; check printer for limitations.

1. Windows 95 OSR2.1 also includes USB support, but many USB devices will not work with that version. Windows Me can use Windows 98 drivers, but a different driver is required for Windows 2000. More USB devices support Windows 98/Me than 2000.

2. I recommend you purchase printers that can also be used with parallel ports in case of problems with USB support.

Printers also can be interfaced by IEEE-1394 and SCSI ports, but these implementations are used primarily by Macintosh systems with high-end inkjet or laser printers in graphic arts environments.

Use Tables 7.5 and 7.6 to help you keep your printer running reliably.

Hewlett-Packard PCL Versions

Use Table 7.5 to determine which printer control language (PCL) features a printer offers, based on the version of HP-PCL it supports. You also can use this table to choose compatible printers in case you don't have exactly the right driver for a given HP-PCL printer or compatible.

Table 7.5 lists major printer models that support various versions of PCL. It is not exhaustive; check your printer's manual for details about its PCL version and features.

Table 7.5 Hewlett-Packard Printer Control Language (PCL)			
Versions			
Version	Date	Models	Benefits
PCL 3	1984	LaserJet LaserJet Plus	Full page formatting; vector graphics.
PCL 4	1985	LaserJet Series II LaserJet IIP series	Added typefaces; downloadable macros; support for larger bitmapped fonts and graphics.
PCL 5	1990	LaserJet III, IIID, IIIP, IIIsi	Scalable typefaces; outline fonts; HP-GL/2 (vector) graphics; font scaling.
PCL 5e	1992	LaserJet 4, 4M, 4L, 4ML, 4P, 4MP, 4 Plus, 4M Plus, 5P, 5MP, 5L, 5L-FS, 5Lxtra, 6L, 6Lxi, 6Lse, 6P, 6MP, 6Psi, 6Pse	600dpi support; bidirectional communication between printer and PC; additional fonts for Microsoft Windows.
PCL 5c	1994	Color LaserJet Color LaserJet 5, 5M	Color extensions
PCL 6	1996	LaserJet 4000 LaserJet 2100	Faster graphics printing and return to application; better WYSIWYG printing; faster graphics printing; less network traffic; better document fidelity and full backward-compatibility with PCL 5 and earlier versions; uses object-oriented printer commands. PCL 6 requires a Windows 9x/NT/3.1 printer driver; non-Windows operating systems can use a PCL 6 printer as a PCL 5e printer.

Comparing Host-Based to PDL-Based Printers

Most printers use a page description language (PDL). PDL-based printers receive commands from applications or the operating system that describe the page to the printer, which then renders it before printing. More and more low-cost printers are using a host-based printing system in which the computer renders the page instead of the printer.

Use Table 7.6 to determine which type of printer is suitable for your users.

Table 7.6 PDL Versus Host-Based Printers

Printer Type	Feature	Benefit	Drawback
PDL (includes HP-PCL and compatibles, PostScript)	Page rendered in printer	Printer can be used independently of a PC or particular operating system; MS-DOS support	Higher cost because brains are inside the printer
Host-based	Page rendered by computer	Lower cost because brains are inside the PC, not the printer	Printer must be married to a computer with a compatible operating system and minimum performance requirements; non-Windows support is chancy; often can't be networked

Use Table 7.7 to determine the simplest way to test a printer. Note that host-based printers *must* have their drivers installed before they can print.

Table 7.7 Testing Printers

Printer Type	Test Method
Non-PostScript printer using PDL or escape sequences (HP-PCL, compatibles, dot-matrix, inkjet)	Enter DIR>LPTI from a command prompt (MS-DOS or Windows 9x/Me); printer will print directory listing.
PostScript printer	You must send PostScript commands to the printer directly to test it without drivers. You can use PostScript printer test in Microsoft MSD or install correct drivers and use test print. (Windows 9x/NT/2000/ME offer a printer test at the end of the driver install process. This test can also be performed at any time through the printer's icon in the Printer's folder.)
Host-based printer	Install correct drivers and then use test print as earlier.

Printer Hardware Problems

Use Table 7.8 to track down problems and solutions with printers (any interface type).

Table 7.8 Troubleshooting Printer Problems

Symptom	Printer Type	Cause(s)	Solutions
Fuzzy printing	Laser	Damp paper	Use paper stored at proper temperature and humidity.

Table 7.8 Troubleshooting Printer Problems Continued

Symptom	Printer Type	Cause(s)	Solutions
	Inkjet	Wrong paper type or printer settings	Use inkjet-rated paper; check print setting and match settings and resolution to paper type; make sure you're using correct side of paper (look for a "print this side first" marking on the package).
	Inkjet	Cartridge clogged or not seated correctly	Reseat cartridge; run cleaning utility; remove Canon cartridge from unit and clean printhead.
White lines through printed text or graphics	Inkjet	Some nozzles clogged	Use nozzle-cleaning routine on printer or utility program in printer driver to clean; retest afterwards. On Canon, HP, and other printers with removable printheads, clean printhead with alcohol and foam swab. On Epson and other models with fixed printhead, use cleaning sheet to clean printhead. On any model, replace printer cartridge if three cleaning cycles and tests don't clear up clogging.
	Impact dot-matrix	Pins in printhead stuck or broken	Remove printhead and clean with alcohol and foam swab; retest. If pins are bent or broken, repair or replace printhead. Check head gap and adjust to avoid printhead damage; widen head gap for envelopes, labels, and multipart forms; adjust back to regular position for normal paper. Change ribbon; discard ribbons with snags or tears.
Variable print density	Laser	Toner unevenly distributed in drum or toner cartridge	Remove toner cartridge and shake from side to side; check printer position and ensure it's level; check for light leaks; replace toner cartridge or refill toner.
Fuzzy white lines on pages	Laser	Dirty corotrons (corona wires)	Clean corotrons per manufacturer recommendation.
Pages print solid black	Laser	Broken charger corotron	Replace toner cartridge if it contains corotron, or repair printer.
Pages print solid white	Laser	Broken transfer corotron	Repair transfer corotron.

Table 7.8 Troubleshooting Printer Problems Continued

Symptom	Printer Type	Cause(s)	Solutions
Sharp, vertical white lines	Laser	Dirty developer unit	Clean developer if separate; replace toner cartridge if it contains developer unit.
Regularly spaced spots	Laser	Spots less than 3 inches apart indicate dirty fusing roller Widely spaced spots, or one per page, indicates scratched or flawed drum	Clean fusing roller. Replace drum and fuser cleaning pad.
Gray print	Laser	Worn-out drum	Replace drum (most common with separate drum and toner supply) background.
Loose toner	Laser	Fusing roller not hot enough	Service fusing roller.
Solid vertical black line	Laser	Toner cartridge nearly empty Scratched drum	Shake toner cartridge to redistribute toner. Replace drum or toner cartridge.
Paper jams and misfeeds	Laser and inkjet	Incorrect paper loading; paper too damp; paper wrinkled; paper too heavy/thick for printer	Use paper that is in proper condition for printing; don't overfill paper tray; don't dog-ear paper when loading it.
Envelope jams	Laser and inkjet	Incorrect paper loading; failure to set laser printer to use rear paper exit tray; printer can't handle envelopes	Check correct envelope handling procedures; consider using labels to avoid envelopes.
Blank pages between printed pages	Laser and inkjet	Paper stuck together; paper is damp or wrinkled	Riffle paper before loading paper tray; make sure all paper is the same size.
Blank page between print jobs	Laser and inkjet	Print spooler set to produce a blank divider page	Change print spooler setting.

Table 7.8 Troubleshooting Printer Problems Continued

Symptom	Printer Type	Cause(s)	Solutions
Error light on printer flashes; printer ejects partial page (might require you to press page-eject button)	Laser	Memory or overflow printer overrun error	Reduce graphics resolution; simplify a PostScript page; reduce number of fonts; check printer memory size is accurately set; run printer self-test to determine amount of RAM onboard; add RAM to printer.
Error light blinks; no page ejected or printed	Laser	Various causes	Look up blink code in printer documentation and take appropriate action. Error codes vary with printer model; check manufacturer's Web site for a list of codes if the user manual is missing.
LCD panel on printer displays error code or message	Laser	Various causes	Look up error code or message in manual and take appropriate action. Error codes vary with printer model; check manufacturer's Web site for a list of codes if the user manual is missing. Many less-expensive models use signal lights (see previous).

Printer Connection Problems

Use Table 7.9 to determine the cause and cure for problems with your printer connection.

Table 7.9 Troubleshooting Printer Connections

Symptom	Printer Type Or Port Type	Cause(s)	Solutions
Gibberish printing	Any	PDL used for print job doesn't match printer	Make sure print job is sent to correct printer; check default printer value; check port used for printer; check switchbox for proper printer selection; replace switchbox with LPT2 card or with USB-parallel cable.
		Damaged cable	Look for damaged pins or insulation; use pinouts for each port type to test cable with a loop back plug or with a multimeter with CONT (continuity) function; retest with known-working cable.
	Serial port	Incorrect speed, word length, parity, and stop bits	Both serial port on computer and printer must be set to match.

Table 7.9 Troubleshooting Printer Connections Continued

Symptom	Printer Type Or Port Type	Cause(s)	Solutions
	PostScript laser	<p>Incorrect cable pinout</p> <p>PostScript preamble not properly received</p>	<p>Use DOS MODE or Windows COM Port properties sheet to set serial port on computer.</p> <p>Printer configuration varies; might involve use of DIP switches, jumper blocks, printer setup panel, or software configuration program; see printer manual.</p> <p>No such thing as a “universal” RS-232 printer cable; check pinouts at both computer and printer end; rewire or reorder cable as needed.</p> <p>Check cable; check serial port configuration; reload drivers.</p>
Printer not available	<p>Any</p> <p>USB port</p>	<p>Print job has timed out; computer is using offline mode to spool jobs</p> <p>Printer may not be detected by Device Manager</p>	<p>Check for paper out; reload paper. Check printer cable or serial port settings; look for IRQ conflicts and correct them; set switchbox to automatic mode, or lock it to computer you want to print from.</p> <p>Check Device Manager; remove and reattach printer and recheck.</p> <p>See Chapter 8 for other USB troubleshooting tips.</p>
Printer doesn't notify Windows of paper out, jams, out of toner or ink, etc.	Laser and inkjet	IEEE-1284 connection not working	Ensure port and cable(s) and switchbox are all IEEE-1284 (EPP or ECP or EPP/ECP); check cable connection; CMOS/BIOS configuration. Install ECP LPT port driver in Windows.
Intermittent or failed communications with printer	<p>Any</p> <p>Parallel port</p>	<p>Bad switchbox or cables</p> <p>Device daisy-chain with printer</p>	<p>Use direct connection to printer; check cables; replace rotary-dial manual switchbox with autosensing switchbox.</p> <p>Use printer only; change order of daisy-chain; avoid use of Zip, scanner, and printer on single LPT port.</p>

Table 7.9 Troubleshooting Printer Connections Continued

Symptom	Printer Type Or Port Type	Cause(s)	Solutions
	USB port	Hub or driver problems	See Chapter 8 for USB troubleshooting tips.
Port busy; printer goes offline	Laser and inkjet	ECP port prints too fast for printer	Use Windows 9x/Me Control Panel to load standard LPT driver in place of ECP driver; change setting in BIOS to EPP or bidirectional.

If your USB printer can also be used as a parallel printer, use the parallel (LPT) port if you cannot solve print quality or reliability problems when you use it in USB mode.

Printer Driver and Application Problems

Printers use driver software to communicate with operating systems and applications. Use Table 7.10 to solve problems with drivers and applications.

Table 7.10 Troubleshooting Printer Drivers and Applications

Symptom	Printer Type	Cause(s)	Solutions
Prints okay from command prompt (DIR>LPT1), but not from applications	Any	Printer driver damaged or buggy	Reload printer driver and test; reinstall printer driver; switch to compatible new version that can be downloaded.
Form-feed light comes on, but nothing prints	Laser	Incomplete page sent to printer	Normal behavior for Print-Screen or envelope printing; eject paper manually; otherwise, reinstall driver.
Incorrect fonts print	Laser or inkjet	Printer using internal fonts instead of TrueType	Check driver setting to determine which fonts will be used.
Incorrect page breaks	Any	Printer changed between document composition and printing	If you change printers or plan to use a fax modem to print your document, select the printer and scroll through your document first to check page breaks due to differences in font rendering and so on; correct as needed.
Page cut off on left, right, top, or bottom edges	Laser or inkjet	Margins set beyond printable area of printer	Reset document margins; use "print to fit" to scale page or document to usable paper size; check for proper paper size set in printer properties.

Troubleshooting Parallel Port and Other Types of Scanners

Scanners are among the most popular add-ons to computers, but they can cause plenty of problems for users. Use Table 7.11 to help make scanning trouble-free.

Table 7.11 Scanner Troubleshooting

Interface Type	Problem	Causes	Solution
Parallel	Slow scanning speed Scanner not recognized	Wrong port setting Problems with daisy-chain when scanner used with non-printer devices or as third item (printer, scanner, and anything else)	Use ECP or EPP mode per scanner. Shuffle order of scanner and non-printing device; check port settings; try scanner by itself; install second parallel port; make sure SCSI/Parallel scanner set for parallel mode; check device driver setup during boot; and set SCSI/Parallel scanner for SCSI mode; check cable.
SCSI	Scanner not recognized	Termination set wrong; wrong SCSI ID; no drivers installed	Terminate scanner only if last device in SCSI daisy-chain; look for switch or terminating plug and check operation; check SCSI IDs already in use and select an unused number; install TWAIN or ISIS drivers as well as SCSI drivers; check cable.
USB	Scanner not recognized	USB port not working or not present	Enable USB port in BIOS or install card; check port for IRQ conflict; use Windows 98, ME, or 2000 to avoid support problems with Windows 95B; get updated drivers; check cable.
All	Scanner worked with Windows 95, but not after Windows 98 upgrade Scanner not recognized	TWAIN.DLL file was replaced by Windows 98 Scanner turned off when system booted	Use Windows 98's Version Conflict Manager to determine if TWAIN.DLL was replaced; use the original version (backed up by VCM). Turn on scanner, open Windows 9x/Me/2000's Device Manager and refresh devices; if this doesn't work, leave the scanner on and reboot the system.

Table 7.11 Scanner Troubleshooting Continued

Interface Type	Problem	Causes	Solution
	Acquire command in Photoshop or other programs won't launch scanner	TWAIN or ISIS drivers not properly installed or registered in system Registry; scanner turned off	Verify scanner detected by system; if scanner works with its own software (not launched from another application), reinstall drivers and verify Acquire command works.
	Graphics look distorted during scan	Wrong scanning mode set for document	Use Table 7.12 to determine best scanning mode by document type.

Use Table 7.12 as a quick reference to help determine the best scanning mode for your documents.

Table 7.12 Recommended Scanning Modes for Document Types

Document Type	Color Photo	Drawing	Text	B&W Photo Scanning Mode
Line Art	No	Yes	Yes	No
OCR	No	No	Yes	No
Grayscale	No	Yes ¹	No	Yes
Color photo	Yes	No	No	Yes ²
Color halftone	Yes ³	No	No	No
Color drawing	No	Yes	No	No
256-color	No	Yes	No	No
Copy/fax	Yes ⁴	Yes ⁴	Yes ⁴	Yes ⁴

1. Recommended only for drawings containing pencil shading and ink wash effects

2. Use to convert color to black and white if photo-editing software conversion is unavailable or produces inferior results

3. Adjust halftone options to match output device's requirements

4. Use to prepare scanned image for sending as fax or when image will be photocopied; converts all tones to digital halftones

Parallel Port Drives

Parallel ports were originally designed for printing, but have been pressed into service for many different tasks, including tape, optical, and removable-media drives.

Use Table 7.13 to help you get the most from parallel port interface drives.

Table 7.13 Troubleshooting Parallel Port Drives

Drive Type	Problem	Solution
Any drive type	Drive not detected in Device Manager or backup program	Check power and tighten cables; refresh Device Manager. Restart system if necessary; rerun drive installation software or tape backup installation software.
Any drive type	Slow operation	Use fastest parallel port mode (EPP or ECP) available. Use drive or backup program setup utility to adjust speed of port.
CD-R/CD-RW drive	Buffer underruns; can't make CD-Rs reliably	Use fastest parallel port mode (EPP or ECP) available. Reduce write speed. Avoid using computer for other tasks while making CD-R. Use packet-writing with CD-Rs to reduce load on CPU if media will be used on computers that can accept multisession CD-Rs.